

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

MAKHABAT ZAKANKYZY BERKUTBAEVA  
GULMIRA KALYBAIKYZY ABDIRASSILOVA  
TURARKUL NAZARBAEVA



**IKSAD**  
Publishing House



**MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND SCIENCE OF THE  
REPUBLIC  
OF KAZAKHSTAN**

**KAZAKH STATE WOMEN'S TEACHER TRAINING  
UNIVERSITY**

**MAKHABAT ZAKANKYZY BERKUTBAEVA  
GULMIRA KALYBAIKYZY ABDIRASSILOVA  
TURARKUL NAZARBAEVA**

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR  
ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

**Almaty 2018**



Copyright © 2018 by iksad publishing house

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

Institution Of Economic Development And Social  
Researches Publications®

(The Licence Number of Publicator: 2014/31220)

TURKEY TR: +90 342 606 06 75

USA: +1 631 685 0 853

E posta: [kongreiksad@gmail.com](mailto:kongreiksad@gmail.com)

[www.iksad.net](http://www.iksad.net)

[www.iksad.org](http://www.iksad.org)

[www.iksadkongre.org](http://www.iksadkongre.org)

It is responsibility of the author to abide by the publishing ethics rules.

Iksad Publications - 2018©

**ISBN: 978-605-7510-62-4**

Cover Design: İbrahim Kaya

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

It was recommended by editorial board of Kazakh State Women's Teacher Training University.

Баспаға Қазақ Мемлекеттік Қыздар педагогикалық университетінің Редакциялық баспа кеңесі ұсынған.

Berkutbaeva M.Z., Abdirassilova G.K., Nazarbaeva T.

Basic English for elementary and pre-intermediate learners 2018.: 337 s.

The proposed textbook is based on a typical program of language discipline.

The purpose of the textbook - the formation of intercultural communication of students, the development of speech activity of students on the basis of specially selected materials.

The textbook is for students of non-linguistic groups of the University and adapted for students entering the University.

Ұсынылып отырған оқулық шетел тілі пәнінің типтік бағдарламасы бойынша жасалған. Оқулықтың мақсаты-студенттердің мәдениетаралық қарым-қатынасын қалыптастыру, арнайы тандалған материалдар негізінде студенттердің сөйлеу іскерлігін дамытуға бағытталған. Оқулық жоғары оқу орнының тілдік емес топтарының студенттеріне арналған және жоғары оқу орнына түсуші талапкерлерге арналады.

© Berkutbaeva M.Z.  
© Abdirassilova G.K.  
© Nazarbaeva T

### АЛҒЫ СӨЗ

Қазақстан Республикасы егеменді ел болып, оны тәуелсіз мемлекет ретінде дүние жүзінде жүзден астам мемлекеттер танып, дипломатиялық, экономикалық тағы басқа байланыстар орнатып келе жатқан кезде, әрине біздің қоғамымызға сол елдердің өкілдерімен тіл арқылы түсінісе алатын азаматтар қажет. Осыған байланысты орта мектепте шетел тілін оқытудың басты мақсаты - коммуникативтік мақсат болуға тиіс, яғни орта мектепті бітүрші бағдарламада белгіленген көлемде оқыған шетел тілін - қатынас құралы ретінде меңгеруге тиіс. Демек сөз әрекетінің негізгі түрлерін: монолог және диалог түрінде сөйлеу, ауызша айтылған сөзді тыңдап түсіну, жазбаша мәтіндерді оқып ондағы ақпаратты қабылдай білу іскерліктерін меңгеруге тиіс. Ал жоғары оқу орнында оқитын әрбір студент шетел тілін оқу арқылы өзінің жандүниесін байытады, ой-өрісін кеңейтеді, көркемдік талғамын қалыптастырады, халықаралық достыққа, мәдениетке тәрбиеленеді.

Елбасының Жолдауында көрсеткеніндей, бүгінгі жастар ертеңгі күн әлемдік білім кеңістігіне еркін ену үшін білім беру жүйесі халықаралық деңгейге көтерілуі керек. Бұл оқулықта біліктілікке қойылатын талапты ескере отырып:

а) Сөйлеуге (Speaking) арналған жаңа сөздер мен сөз тіркестері;

ә) Жазуға (Writing) әр жана сабаққа 10 жаттығу және студенттің өздік жұмысына арналған 15 тест;

б) Оқуға (Reading) арналған тақырыптық мәтіндер берілді.

Оқулықтың соңына грамматикалық кестелер мен тақырыптық сөздіктер берілді.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

Ұсынылып отырған оқулық жоғары оқу орындарының студенттеріне және ағылшын тілін үйренуді бастаған талапкерлерге арналған.

Бұл оқулық Білім және ғылым министрлігі бекіткен Мемлекеттік білім беру стандартына сәйкес шет тілдерін оқытудың типтік бағдарламасы бойынша жасалған. Оқулық жоғары оқу орнында оқитын студенттер мен өз бетімен ағылшын тілін оқып үйренушілерге көмегін тигізеді деген ниетпен...

**Авторлардан**

## Chapter I

### Lesson 1

#### Speaking

**Read the following dialogues and learn it by heart:**

- Look Jake, have you got a family of your own?
- Oh, no, I'm not married yet. I live with my parents.
- Is your family large ?
- I don't think so. My parents have got only two daughters.
- And which of you is the eldest?
- It's me. I'm twenty.
- How old is your younger sister? I wonder what her name is?
- Susan. She's a lovely girl. She is ten.
- It's a pleasure to have such a young sister, isn't it?
- Certainly. She's the apple of my eye.

#### Reading

#### The English Alphabet

Таңбалануы	Оқылуы	Таңбалануы	Оқылуы
<b>Aa</b>	[ei]	<b>Nn</b>	[en]
<b>Bb</b>	[bi:]	<b>Oo</b>	[ou]
<b>Cc</b>	[si:]	<b>Pp</b>	[pi:]
<b>Dd</b>	[di:]	<b>Qq</b>	[kju:]
<b>Ee</b>	[i:]	<b>Rr</b>	[a:]
<b>Ff</b>	[ef]	<b>Ss</b>	[es]
<b>Gg</b>	[dʒi:]	<b>Tt</b>	[ti:]
<b>Hh</b>	[eit]	<b>Uu</b>	[ju:]
<b>Ii</b>	[ai]	<b>Vv</b>	[vi:]
<b>Jj</b>	[dʒei]	<b>Ww</b>	['dʌ bl ju:]
<b>Kk</b>	[kei]	<b>Xx</b>	[eks]
<b>Ll</b>	[el]	<b>Yy</b>	[wai]
<b>Mm</b>	[em]	<b>Zz</b>	[zed]

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Ағылшын тіліндегі дауысты дыбыстардың оқылуының  
төрт түрі

Буындар	Екпін түсетін буындар				Екпін түспейтін буындар
	Ашық буын (буын дауыстыға аяқталады)	Тұйық буын (буын дауыссызға аяқталады)	Буын <b>г</b> әрпіне аяқталады, одан кейін дауыссыз келеді	Буын <b>г</b> әрпіне аяқталады, одан кейін дауысты келеді	
	Буынның түрі <b>I түрі</b>	Буынның түрі <b>II түрі</b>	Буынның түрі <b>III түрі</b>	Буынның түрі <b>IV түрі</b>	
Әріптер					
<b>a</b> [ei]	[ei] bale [beil]	[æ] hat [hæt]	[a:] market	[eə] care [kεə]	[ə] similar
<b>o</b> [ou]	[ou] hope	[o] gross [gros]	[ma:kit] [o:] norm	[o:] more [mo:]	[similə] [ə]
<b>e</b> [i:]	[houp] [i:]	[e] let [let]	[no:m] [ə:]	[iə] here [hiə]	doctor
<b>u</b> [ju:]	[hi] [ju:]	[^] bus [b^s]	[ə:] perfect	[ju:ə] pure	[dɒktə] [ə]
<b>i</b> [ai]	[ai] tube [tju:b]	[i] fixed [fikst]	[pə:fikt] [ə:]	[pju:ə] [aiə]	letter
<b>y*</b> [wai]	[ai] nice [nais] [ai] my [mai]	[i] nymph [nimf]	purple [pə:pl] [ə:] first [fə:st] [ə:] hyrst [hə:st]	fire [faiə] [aiə] tyre [taiə]	[letə]      [i] very [veri]

\*Y- сөздің басында дауыстының алдында - [j] болып оқылады:  
yes [jes]



# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

## Екпінді дауысты дыбыстар қосындыларының оқылуы

Әріптің қосылуы	Оқылуы	Мысалы	Әріптің қосылуы	Оқылуы	Мысалы
<b>ai</b> <b>ay</b>	[ei]	Spain Day	<b>Oo</b>	[u:]	Too
<b>ea</b> <b>ee</b>	[i:]	sea meet	<b>ou</b> <b>ow</b>	[au]	out brown
<b>ew</b>	[ju:]	New	<b>ai+r</b>	[ɛə]	chair
<b>oi</b> <b>oy</b>	[oi]	point boy	<b>ee+r</b>	[iə]	engineer
<b>oo</b>	[u]	Book	<b>ou+r</b>	[auə]	Our
<b>ar</b>	[a:]	Arm	<b>oo+r</b>	[o:]	Door

## Екі түрлі оқылуы бар дауыссыздар

Әріп	Орналасуы	Оқылуы	Мысалы
c [si:]	1. e, i, y әріптердің алдында. 2. a, o, u әріптердің алдында, барлық дауыссыздардың және сөздің соңында.	[s]	cent, pencil, icy
		[k]	cap, come, cup, black
g [dʒi:]	1. e, i, y әріптердің алдында. 2. a, o, u әріптердің алдында, барлық дауыссыздардың және сөздің соңында.	[dʒ]	page, gin, gypsy,
		[g]	good, green, big
s [es]	1. Сөздің басында, қатаң дауыссыздардың алдында және сөздің соңында қатаң дауыссыздардан кейін. 2. Дауысты дыбыстылардың арасында, сөздің соңында дауыссыз дыбыстар және үнді дауыссыздардан кейін.	[s]	sit, student, lists
		[z]	please, ties, pens
x [eks]	1. Дауысты дыбыстардың алдында, және сөздің соңында. 2. Екпінді дауыстылардың алдында.	[ks]	text, six
		[gz]	exam

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

## Дауысты және дауыссыз дыбыстарының қосындыларының оқылуы

Әріптер	Орналасуы	Оқылуы	Мысалы
al	1. k екпінді буынының алдында 2. Барлық екпінді дауыссыздардан кейін.	[o:] [o:l]	chalk wall, also
wor	Екпінді дауыссыз дыбыстың алдында.	[wə]	work, word
wwa	1. r әрпінен басқа дауыссыз дыбыстылардың алдында 2. r әрпінің алдында.	[wo] [wo:]	want warm
igh	Кез келгені	[ai]	Light

## Дауыссыз дыбыстар қосындысының оқылуы

Әріптер	Орналасуы	Оқылуы	Мысалы
Sh	Кез келгені	[ʃ]	She
Ch	Кез келгені	[tʃ]	Chess
Tch	Қысқа дауыстылардан кейін	[tʃ]	Match
Sk	Қысқа дауыстылардан кейін	[k]	Black
Th	1.Сөздің басында және аяғында. 2.Есімдіктің алдында, демеуліктер және екі дауысты әріптің ортасында.	[θ] [ð]	thick, myth this, bath
Wh	1.Сөздің басында,барлық дауыстылардың алдында, о әрпінен басқа. 2.О әріпінің алдында	[w] [h]	what who
Qu	Дауысты дыбыстылардың алдында.	[kw]	question
Ng	Сөздің соңында	[ŋ]	Long
Nk	Кез келгені	[ŋk]	Thank
Wr	Сөздің басында.	[r]	Write

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

## ФОНЕТИКА КУРСЫНА КІРІСПЕ

### Ағылшын тілінің әліпбиі

1. Дыбыстар мен әріптер.

Ағылшын тілінің әліпбиінде 26 әріп 44 дыбысты береді: оның 6 дауысты әріпі 24 дауысты дыбысты білдірсе, ал 20 дауыссыз әріп 20 дауыссыз дыбысты білдіреді.

Дыбыстарды таңбалау үшін фонетикалық транскрипция қолданылады. Фонетикалық транскрипцияны, яғни дыбыстарды бейнелеп көрсететін жазу белгілері әдетте төрт бұрышты жақшаға алынады [ ].

2. Дауысты дыбыстар.

Ағылшын тілінде 12 монофтонг және 8 дифтонг (қос) дауысты дыбыс бар. Монофтонг дыбыстар созылыңқы және ықшам дыбыстар болып бөлінеді.

Созылыңқы монофтонгтар: [i:], [a:], [o:], [u:], [ju:]

Ықшам монофтонгтар: [i], [e], [æ], [o], [ʌ], [u], [ju]

Дауысты дыбыстардың созылыңқы я ықшам айтылуы, сөздің мағынасына әсер етеді.

Мысалы: Pete [pi:t] ер адамның аты

Pit [pit] шахта

Дифтонгтар - екі бөліктен тұратын дауысты дыбыстар.

Дифтонгтар: [ei] [ai] [au] [oi] [ou] [ji] [jé] [ju]

Мысалы: my [mai], day [dei], me [mi:];

Дыбыстардың айтылуына арналған жаттығулар:

### 1. Дауысты дыбыстар

#### А.

1. [i] – it is in sit ticket city  
[it iz in sit 'tikit 'siti]

2.[e] – set leg pen bed neck net said  
[set leg pen bed nek net sed]

3.[æ] – cap cat can as back tap  
[kæp kæt kæn æz bæk tæp]

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

4.[o]	– not	pot	got	clock	John			
	[not	pot	got	klok	dʒɒn]			
5.[u]	– book	put	foot	full	hood			
	[buk	put	fut	ful	hud]			
6.[ʌ]	– must	cup	but	front	some	run		
	[mʌst	kʌp	bʌt	frʌnt	sʌm	rʌn]		
7.[ə]	– a	an	ago	again	under	brother	sister	
	[ə	ən	ə'gəʊ	ə'gen	ʌndə	'brʌðə	'sɪstə]	
8.[i:]	– tea	me	sea	see	meal	feet	need	free
	[ti:	mi:	si:	si:	mi:l	fi:t	ni:d	fri:]
9.[a:]	– arm	part	aunt	farm	large			
	[a:m	pa:t	a:nt	fa:m	la:dʒ]			
10.[o:]	– small	port	horse	ball	salt			
	[smo:l	pɔ:t	hɔ:s	bɔ:l	sɔ:lt]			
11.[u:]	– too	fruit	food	roof	pool			
	[tu:	fru:t	fu:d	ru:f	pu:l]			
12.[ə:]	– girl	first	verb	bird	skirt	heard		
	[gɜ:l	fɜ:st	vɜ:b	bɜ:d	skɜ:t	hɜ:d]		
13.[ei]	– day	play	may	make	name	place		
	[dei	plei	mei	meik	neim	pleis]		
14.[ai]	– my	by	buy	side	blind	five		
	[mai	bai	bai	said	blaɪnd	faɪv]		
15. [oi]	– boy	toy	coin	boil	soil			
	[boi	toi	kɔɪn	boɪl	soɪl]			

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

16. [iə] – ear beer near dear hear  
[iə biə niə diə hiə]
17. [éə] – pear pair fare chair hair  
[péə péə féə tʃéə héə]
18. [ou] – no so go cold coat soap blow  
[nou sou gou kould kout soup blou]
19. [au] – now cow town blouse house brown  
[nau kau taun blauz haus braun]
20. [o:] – four more door floor your  
[fo: mo: do: flo: jo:]
21. [uə] – plural February January during usual  
[ˈpluərəl ˈfebruəri ˈdʒænjuəri dʒuəriŋ ju:ʒuəl]

**B.**

1. it eat sit set lift left meet met till tell see say  
[it i:t sit set lift left mi:t met til tel si: sei]
2. street straight me may had head heard  
[stri:t streit mi: mei] [hæd hed hə:d]
3. am arm cat cut coat  
[æm a:m] [kæt k^t kout]
4. part port pot put run ran  
[pa:t po:t pot put] [r^n ræn]
5. torn turn board bad bed beard bird  
[to:n tə:n bo:d] [bæd bed biəd bə:d]
6. but boot boat comb come came  
[b^t bu:t bout] [koum k^m keim]

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

7. some same seem money  
[s^m seim si:m] ['m^ni]
8. bake back book called cold  
[beik bæk buk] [ko:ld kould]
9. better butter her hair fur fare  
['betə 'b^tə] [hə: h'éə fə: f'éə]

**2. Дауыссыз дыбыстар**

[θ] – theatre think thought thumb health Thursday birthday bath  
['θiətə θiŋk θo:t θ^m helθ θə:zdi bə: θdei bə:θ]

[ð] – the this that those these brother father mother  
[ðe ðis ðæt ðouz ði:z br^ðe 'fa:ðə 'm^ðə]

[ʃ] – she shirt shut sheep shelf shall Russian expression  
[ʃi: ə:t ʃ^t ʃi:p ʃelf ʃæl 'r^ʃn iks'preʃn]

[tʃ] – child children cheek chair chips butcher watch  
[tʃaɪld 'tʃɪldrən tʃi:k tʃ'éə tʃips 'butʃə wɒtʃ]

[ʒ] – pleasure usual television measure  
['plezə 'ju:zuəl 'teli'vi:zn 'meʒə]

[dʒ] – jumper cabbage vegetable jacket just  
['dʒ^mpə 'kæbidʒ 'vedʒitəbl 'dʒækɪt dʒ^st]

[ə] – year young you yourfew new usual  
[jə: j^ŋ ju: jo: fju: nju: 'ju:zuəl]

[ŋ] – doing reading writing going spring  
['du:ŋ 'ri:diŋ 'raɪtɪŋ 'gouɪŋ sprɪŋ]

[ŋg] – English England finger  
['iŋgli 'iŋglənd 'fɪŋgə]

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

[ŋk] – think      thank      uncle      ink  
                 [θiŋk      θæŋk      ^ŋkl      iŋk]

[h] – he    has    hav    hair    had    head    who    whole  
         [hi: hæz    hæv    hɛə    hæd    hed    hu:    hou]

[w] – we    when    wish    which    was    woman    women  
         [wi:    wen    wiʃ    wiʃ    woz    'wumən    'wimin]

## 3. Қатаң және ашық соңғы дауыссыздар

1.    set      said      hat      had      foot      food      back      bag  
         [set      sed      hæt      hæd      fut      fu:d      bæk      bæŋ]

2.    off    of    place    plays    thing    leaf    leave  
         [ɒf    ɒv    pleis    pleiz    θiŋ    li:f    li:v]

## Lesson 2

### Speaking

#### Getting acquainted. Part 1.

Teacher      Hello. I'm Mr.(Miss, Mrs.) Smith.

S.1            I'm Miss Jones

Teacher      Nice to meet you, Miss Jones

#### Getting acquainted. Part 2.

Two men

S.1            Hello. I'm Sam Baker

S.2            Nice to meet you, Mr. Baker.

My name's Paul Wood.

S.1            Nice to meet you, Mr. Wood.

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

## Reading

### About My Family

My family is not very big, just a typical family: Dad, Mum, me, my brother and sister. My Mummy is forty-one, she is a teacher of English at the University. She is a born teacher. She has teaching abilities. My Dad is forty-two, he is a professional painter, he works for a design company. My parents both like their work very much.

My elder sister Anar is nineteen, she goes to the University, she wants to be a teacher of history. She is fond of reading books on history. My younger brother Erlan is only six years old, he goes to the kindergarten. He is very funny, I like to spend my free time teaching him something.

My grandparents are retired. They like gardening. They spend a lot of their time in the garden. They grow vegetables and fruits. We enjoy having fresh vegetables and green on our dinner table. I love my family very much. We always help each other. Everyone in my family is my best friend.

### Vocabulary:

1. ability – қабілеттілік
2. typical – қарапайым
3. painter – суретші
4. fiction – әдеби шығармалар
5. funny – күлкілі
6. to spend – өткізу
7. to grow – өсіру
8. to be fond of smth. – ұнату

### Answer the questions:

1. How many members are there in the family?
2. Do you have a brother or a sister?
3. Where do your parents work?
4. Do your parents understand you?
5. How old are your grandparents?
6. How do you get along with your family?
7. Which of the parents do you want to be like?



**Writing**

**TEST**

1. A [eɪ] әрпі қай сөзде алфавиттегідей оқылады?
  - a) cat
  - b) car
  - c) cake
  - d) sat
  - e) ball
2. O [ou] әрпі қай сөзде алфавиттегідей оқылады?
  - a) dog
  - b) stone
  - c) long
  - d) book
  - e) work
3. White сөзінің транскрипциясын жаз.
  - a) [wat]
  - b) [weit]
  - c) [wit]
  - d) [wait]
  - e) [hait]
4. Write сөзінің транскрипциясын жаз.
  - a) [wait]
  - b) [rait]
  - c) [wait]
  - d) [rit]
  - e) [weit]
5. [i:] дыбысымен оқылатын сөзді тап.
  - a) nice
  - b) pin
  - c) six
  - d) lip
  - e) he
6. S әрпі қай сөзде[z] болып оқылады.
  - a) sit
  - b) sat
  - c) rose
  - d) say
  - e) test
7. How many sounds in the word “colour”.
  - a) 1
  - b) 3
  - c) 2
  - d) 0
  - e) 4
- 8). [eit] сөзінің орфографиясын жаз.
  - a) eight
  - b) end
  - c) eleven
  - d) every
  - e) eity

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. [hevi] сөзінің  
орфографиясын жаз.

- a) havу
- b) have
- c) heavy
- d) has
- e) hed

12. type сөзі қай буында  
оқылады?

- a) I
- b) II
- c) III
- d) IV
- e) IV

10. Ағылшын әліпбиінде  
қанша әріп бар?

- a) 24
- b) 26
- c) 22
- d) 20
- e) 18

13. bag сөзі қай буында  
оқылады?

- a) I
- b) II
- c) III
- d) IV
- e) IV

11. Қанша дауысты дыбыс  
бар?

- a) 7
- b) 6
- c) 5
- d) 4
- e) 8

14. Y әрпі қай сөзде [ai]  
болып оқылады?

- a) yellow
- b) yet
- c) type
- d) myth
- e) yes

15. H әрпі қай сөзде  
оқылмайды?

- a) hen
- b) hand
- c) white
- d) high
- e) whole

## Lesson 3

### Speaking

**Compose your own dialogue on the topic. Write about 15 sentences about someone in your family. Use the following words and word combinations in short dialogues or situations of your own:**

- a) description
- b) likes/dislikes
- c) personality

- father
- mother
- parents
- grandfather
- grandmother
- grandparents
- daughter
- son
- (elder) brother
- (younger) sister
- family (large, small)
- (four) people in the family
- to look after
- to bring up the children
- to go to school (college, university, institute)
- to have friends
- to invite to
- to have a party
- to be at work (at school)
- to work hard

### Reading

#### About Myself

First of all let me introduce myself. My name is Arman. I'm seventeen years old. I'm at 11<sup>th</sup> grade. There are two more kids in the family besides - my elder brother Erlan and my younger sister Maria. Erlan is twenty-one, he attends an University, he will be a dentist. Maria is only twelve, she is a schoolgirl. My parents are not old at all. My Mum is forty, she works for newspaper. My Dad is forty-four, he is an engineer in computers. My parents love their jobs very much.

I'm doing quite well at school. My parents are proud of my marks. I go in for sports. I play basket-ball. I take part in different basket-

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
ball competitions. My grandparents are already retired. They like gardening and spend all their time growing tomatoes, potatoes, onions, strawberries, raspberries.

### Vocabulary:

1. to introduce – таныстыру
2. to be proud of smth – мақтанғыш ету
3. to go in for sports – спортпен шұғылдану
4. occupation – мамандық
5. to retire – зейнеткерлікте болу

### Answer the questions:

1. Do you go to school?
2. What grade are you at?
3. How old are your parents?
4. Are you the only child in the family?
5. Do you have a pet?
6. Are your grandparents still alive?
7. Do you go in for sports?
8. Do you like reading?

## GRAMMAR

### THE NOUN

#### Зат есім

Зат есім заттың атын, нәрселерді, табиғат пен қоғамдық өмірдегі ұшырасатын әр алуан құбылыстар мен уақиғаларды, ұғымдар мен түсініктерді білдіретін сөз табы. Зат есім *who is this?* (бұл кім), *what is this?* (бұл не) деген сұрақтарға жауап береді.

1. Зат есімнің алдына артикль қойылады. Артикльдің екі түрі бар:

a) The Indefinite article (Белгісіздік артикль) – a /an.

b) The Definite article (Белгілілік артикль) – the.

Белгісіздік артикльі “a” және “an”. Егер сөз дауыссыз әріптен басталса “a” колданылады: *a book, a table*. Егер сөз дауысты

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
әріптен басталса “an” қолданылады: an apple, an egg, an ice-cream, an old man.

2. Зат есімнің екі түрі (number) бар: singular (жекеше), plural (көпше). Зат есімнің көпше түрі көбінесе жекеше түрдегі зат есімге -s, -es жалғаулары жалғану арқылы жасалады. Зат есімге көптік жалғау -s, es- жалғанғанда, оның оқылуы әр түрлі болады. Мысалы: *a book* (жекеше) – кітап; *books* (көпше) - кітаптар; *a table* -үстел, *tables* -үстелдер.

Жалпы зат есім *countable nouns* (саналатын зат есім) және *uncountable nouns* (саналмайтын зат есім) болып екіге бөлінеді. Мысалы саналатын зат есімдер *book* (кітап), *ball* (доп). Саналмайтын зат есімдер: *milk* (сүт), *water* (су). Сөйлемде зат есім бастауыш, анықтауыш, толықтауыш, пысықтауыш қызметін атқарады.

Ж.р зат есімдері м.р. зат есімдеріне – ess , – ine (– ina), – er, – ette суффиксін жалғау арқылы жасайды.

actor – actress	god – goddess
host – hostess	waiter – waitress
poet – poetess	prince – princess
lion – lioness	widower – widow
tiger – tigress	hero – heroine

### Plural form of countable nouns

(Саналатын зат есімнің көпше түрі).

1. Зат есімнің көпше түрі көбінесе жекеше түрдегі зат есімге -s жалғауы жалғану арқылы жасалады.

a book - books

a desk - desks

a table - tables

a dog – dogs

2. Егер зат есімнің жекеше түрінде соңғы -y әріпінің алдында дауыссыз дыбыс келсе, онда зат есімнің көпше түрінде -y әріпі i әріпіне өзгеріп, -es жалғауына ие болады:

a city - cities

a baby - babies

a country - countries

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

a lady - ladies

3. Егер зат есім жекеше түрде **-y** әріпіне аяқталып ,ол дауысты дыбыстан кейін тұрса, онда зат есім көпше түрде **-s** жалғауын жалғайды:

a boy – boys

a day – days

a toy – toys

4. Егер зат есім жекеше түрде **-o** әріпімен аяқталса ,онда көпше түріне **-es** жалғанады:

a hero - heroes

a tomato - tomatoes

a potato - potatoes

Ескерту: бірақ мына зат есімдер бұл ережеге бағынбайды:

a photo - photos

a piano - pianos

a dynamo - dynamos

a kimano – kimanos

5. Егер зат есім жекеше түрде **-s, -ss, -ch, -sh, -x** әріптеріне аяқталса, онда көпше түрде **-es** жалғауын жалғайды:

a bus - buses

a class - classes

a match - matches

a dish - dishes

a fox - foxes

a dress – dresses

6. Егер зат есім жекеше түрде **-f, -fe, әріптерімен аяқталса, онда көпше түрде -f, -fe, -v, -ve** әріпіне өзгертіліп, **-es** жалғанады.

a knife - knives

a wife - wives

a wolf - wolves

a leaf - leaves

Ескерту: бірақ мына зат есімдер бұл ережеге бағынбайды:

a chief - chiefs

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

a safe - safes  
a roof - roofs  
a proof - proofs  
a handkerchief – handkerchiefs

7. Егер зат есім жекеше түрде **-th** әріп тіркесіне аяқталса, онда көпше түрде **-s** жалғауын жалғайды:

a mouth - mouths  
a path - paths

### **Irregular plurals**

(Ережеге бағынбайтын зат есімнің көпше түрі).

1. Кейбір зат есімнің ішкі флекцияға ұшырауы сөз түбіріндегі дауысты әріпті өзгертеді:

a man - men  
a woman - women  
a tooth - teeth  
a foot - feet  
a goose - geese  
a mouse - mice  
an ox - oxen  
a child – children

2. Кейбір зат есімнің жекеше түрі мен көпше түрі бірдей болады, яғни жекешеге де, көпшеге де бірдей омонимдік формаларды қолданылуы:

a sheep - sheep  
a deer - deer  
a swine - swine  
an aircraft - aircraft  
a fish – fish

3. Кейбір зат есімнің түбіріне **-s** жалғауы жалғанады:

a mother - in- law	mothers-in-law
a father-in-law	fathers-in-law
a daughter-in-law	daughters-in-law
a sister-in-law	sisters-in-law

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

a brother-in-law	brothers-in-law
a son-in-law	sons-in-law
a passer-by	passers-by

4. Кейбір зат есімнің 2-ші сыңарына көптік **-s** жалғауы жалғанады:  
a bookshop-bookshops  
a newspaper-newspapers

### **Uncountable nouns** (Саналмайтын зат есім).

Мына сөздер тек жекеше түрде қолданылады.

#### **(These words have only singular).**

- Белгілі бір формасы жоқ заттар:
  - азық түлік атаулары: *bread, butter, cheese, chicken*
  - сусын аттары: *tea, coffee, milk, water, ice*
  - газ тектес заттардың аттары: *air, steam, fog, smoke.*
  - өсімдік аттары: *fruit, wheat, barley, oats, cotton.*
- Абстрактылы ойлар мен ұғымдарды білдіретін заттар: *knowledge, love, mind, happiness, freedom, honesty, advice, peace.*
- Ғылым салаларының аттары: *philology, philosophy, mathematics, music, science, economics, chemistry, computer*
- Қимыл-әрекетті білдіретін зат есімдер: *dancing, swimming, travelling, running.*
- Белгілі категорияға жатпайтын зат есімдер: *money, hair, goods, news, homework, twilight.*
- Мына сөздер тек көпше түрде қолданылады. (These words have only plural):**
  - заттардың аттары: *spectacles, trousers, scissors, clothes, scales.*
  - адамдар, полиция: *people, police.*



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I. Give forms of the following nouns.**

month, eye, deer, army, frenchman, brush, man, factory, toy,  
shelf, wife, child, name, place, watch, sheep, hat, boy, roof,  
mouse, key, lady, goose, photo, hero, potato, wolf, ox, tooth, fox.

**II. Write the plural.**

flower-	umbrella-	family-	week-	star-
boat-	address-	foot-	roof-	man-
woman-	knife-	holiday-	baby-	tooth-
city-	sandwich-	potato-	person-	box-

**III. Write the following nouns in the singular.**

sheep, cities, parts, shelves, boxes, surfaces, men, feet, languages,  
centuries.

**IV. Complete the story.**

1. My name is ... .
2. I live in ... .
3. I am ... years old.
4. My family is rather large .
5. We are six: father, mother, grandmother, two sisters and me.
6. My father works at ... .
7. He is ... .
8. My mother works at ... .
9. She is ... .
10. My grandmother is ... years old.
11. She doesn't work.
12. She is ... .
13. My elder sister's name is ... .
14. She is ... years old.
15. My younger sister goes to school.
16. We are all great friends.
17. We like to spend our spare time together.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
18. In the evening father ..., mother ..., grandmother ..., my sisters ... and I sometimes go ... .

**V. Insert prepositions and postpositions where necessary.**

1. My family is not large.
2. We are four ... the family.
3. My mother works ... school .
4. She is a teacher ... English.
5. My father is an engineer.
6. He works ... a factory .
7. My parents are fond ... sports.
8. My sister is 22.

**VI. Give appropriate feminine Nouns.**

an actor, a poet, a man, an uncle, a husband, a brother, a grandfather, a son, a master, a baron, a count.

**VII. Give appropriate masculine Nouns.**

a lady, a girl, a niece, Mrs. Smith, a widow, a stewardess, a French woman, a cow, a queen, a princess, a duchess, a hen, a mother.

**VIII. Put the following Nouns in the plural.**

a table, a plate, a fox, a room, a lady, a knife, a chair, a bus, a match, a way, a house, a family, a flag, a town, a wolf, a country, a lion, a park, a play.

**IX. Write the following Nouns in the plural.**

a star, a mountain, a tree, a king, the waiter, a man, a woman, an eye, a shelf, a box, a city, a boy, a goose, a watch, a mouse, a dress, a toy, a sheep, a tooth, a child, an ox, a deer, a tomato.

**X. Translate and write the following Nouns in the singular.**

I met ten merry **men**.  
Then I met ten happy **women**.

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

Then I met ten pretty **children**.  
They all lived in one kingdom  
Children ,women ,men and **mice**  
Study hard and you'll be wise!

## Lesson 4

### Speaking

**Describe your family. Use the following words and word combinations in short dialogues or situations of your own:**

- husband
- wife
- aunt
- uncle
- mother-in-law
- father-in-law
- nephew
- niece
- stepmother
- stepfather
- stepson
- stepdaughter
- to take care of
- to love
- to be happy
- to live in a hostel
- to rent a room
- to be married
- to be single
- to be fond of

### Reading

#### My Birthday

Birthday is a very wonderful day. Everybody likes to celebrate it. It is a good opportunity to spend time with friends, parents, relatives. I was born on the 10<sup>th</sup> of January. In the morning on my birthday my parents lay the presents near my bed. So the first thing I see when I open my eyes is my presents. My Mum and Daddy and my little brother come to my room to congratulate me and to sing "Happy Birthday". Usually we hold my birthday party in the evening. Once we went to a cafe to celebrate my birthday, but usually we celebrate it at home. We clean the house the day before birthday. In the morning of birthday party day my father goes shopping and buys everything we need.

My mother bakes a cake or a pie. By the evening food is cooked, the table is laid. We put on evening suits and dresses and wait for the guests. The flat looks nice and cosy. I am always very glad to

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
meet my guests. I like to get flowers and presents. Mum gives me the telegram from my aunt. We have an abundant dinner on this day. Mum brings the birthday cake. I blow the candles out. We dance and sing songs, play games and laugh, joke, tell funny stories. I think that my birthday is one of the best days in a year.

### Vocabulary:

1. to celebrate – тойлау
2. opportunity – мүмкіндік
3. relative – туысқан
4. to be born – дүниеге келу
5. to congratulate – құттықтау
6. to bake [beik] – пісіру
7. cosy [kouzi] – жайлы
8. to blow out – үрлеу

### Answer the questions:

1. When were you born?
2. Where were you born?
3. How old are you?
4. Do you celebrate your birthday?
5. Do you get presents and flowers?
6. Who cooks the birthday cake?
7. What is your favourite birthday meal?

### Writing

### TEST

1. Find the correct plural form:

These ... are teachers.

- a) men
- b) a man
- c) a men
- d) man

2. Find the correct plural form:

My friend has three ....

- a) child
- b) childs

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- c) children
- d) a child

- d) matchoes

3. Choose the right variant:

Many \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) dress
- b) dresess
- c) dresses
- d) dresen

8. Choose the right variant: a foot

- a) feet
- b) footes
- c) footo
- d) foots

4. Choose the right variant:

a woman:

- a) womans
- b) women
- c) womens
- d) woman

9. Choose the right variant:

a knife

- a) knives
- b) knifs
- c) knife
- d) knives

5. Choose the correct plural form: a book.

- a) book
- b) books
- c) bookes
- d) bookses

10. Choose the right variant:

a sheep.

- a) sheeps
- b) sheep
- c) sheepes
- d) shepoes

6. Choose the right variant: a house

- a) housie
- b) houses
- c) housess
- d) housies

11. Find the correct plural form: a leaf:

- a) leaves
- b) leafes
- c) leavs
- d) leafs

7. Choose the right variant: a match.

- a) match
- b) matchs
- c) matches

12. Find the correct plural form: a fox:

- a) foxss
- b) foxes
- c) foxs
- d) fox

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

13. Find the correct plural form: a city:
- a) cityies
  - b) cities
  - c) cityes
  - d) citys
14. Find the plural form of fish:
- a) fishes
  - b) fishis
  - c) fish
  - d) fishies
15. Find the plural form of “mouse”:
- a) mouses
  - b) mousis
  - c) mice
  - d) mousies

## Lesson 5

### Speaking

**Make up a dialogue on the topic “My friend’s family”. Use these expressions:**

- typical of
- good friend
- to change
- to improve
- to be able to
- to be good at
- ability
- hobby
- to be born
- in the family of
- at the age of
- to live
- birthday
- birthday party
- birthday present
- grown-up
- to spend
- childhood
- to move to
- student

Write about 20 sentences about your best friend.

### Reading

#### My Best Friend

I have many friends. I like my friends. When we gather, we play computer games, chat, make lots of noise. I like noise. We have

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
much in common and we enjoy communicating with each other. One of my friends is Ainur. She is 17. She is a schoolgirl. She wants to be a teacher like her mother. She studies well, but she is not a hardworking person. When we gather together we like to play computer games, to watch new movies and discuss them. Her favourite subject at school is Maths. She is keen on Maths. We are friends for a long time. We trust each other. We have some personal secrets. I can tell her about my troubles and she always helps me, if she can.

I'm happy to have such a good friend as Ainur.

### Vocabulary:

1. to gather - жиналу
2. to support - көмектесу
3. to discuss - талқылау
4. to be keen on - бір нәрсемен шұғылдану
5. to trust - сенім арту

### Answer the questions:

1. Do you have many friends?
2. What do you do when you gather?
3. Is it necessary to have many friends? Why?
4. How old is your friend?

## GRAMMAR

### POSSESSIVE CASE OF NOUNS

Зат есімнің тәуелдік жалғауы

Singular form (Жекеше түрі)	Plural form (Көпше түрі)	
- 's	- '	- 's
Girl's dress	Girls' dresses	Sheep's wool
Engineer's plans	Engineers' plans	Men's hobbies

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

Зат есім тәуелденіп ілік септікте: Кімнің? Кімдікі? деген сұрақтарға жауап береді. Тәуелдік ілік септік жалғау арқылы жасалады:

- 's (*жекеше түрде*) *жалғауы*

-' *жалғауы*(*көпше түрде*) *жалғанады*

son's name - ұлдың аты

sons' names - ұлдардың аттары

boy's book - баланың кітабы

boys' book - балалардың кітабы

girl's toy - қыздың ойыншығы

girls' toys - қыздардың ойыншықтары

my mother-in-law's library –менің енемнің кітапханасы

the commander-in-chief's order- бас қолбасшының бұйрығы

Arman and Dana's flat is large.

a minute's walk

five minute's walk

a day's work

three day's work

a dog's tail

dogs' tails

the companie's office

companies' offices

my family's welfare

our families' welfare

Жансыз зат есімдер тәуелдік жалғауын **of** + зат есім арқылы жасайды. the roof of the house

the end of the story

*Ерекіше жағдайда:*

*children's names*

*men's names*

*women's names*

### Writing

#### Exercises

**I. Rephrase the following word combinations and suggestions, to use the possessive case.**

1. The room of my friend.
2. The questions of my son.
3. The wife of my brother.
4. The table of our teacher.



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. The poems of Abai.
6. The voice of this girl.
7. The new club of the workers.
8. The letter of Pete.
9. The car of my parents.
10. The life of this woman.
11. The handbags of these women.
12. The flat of my sister is large.
13. The children of my brother are at home.
14. The room of the boys is large.
15. The name of this girl is Jane.
16. The work of these students is interesting.

### II. Use the possessive case.

1. What is \_ (the name / this city)?
2. Do you like \_\_ (the colour / this dress)?
3. What is \_ (the address / Jill)?
4. Write your name at \_ (the top / the page)?
5. Are these \_ (the children) pens?
6. Are you \_ (Ann) daughter?
7. What's \_\_ (the Wilsons) number?
8. Carol and Nadine are sisters. That's \_ (Carol and Nadine) father.
9. Whose camera is this? It is \_\_ the camera/Tom.
10. What is \_\_ the name/your wife?

### III. Use the noun in brackets in the proper form instead of the possessive pronoun in italics.

1. It is *her book*. (Helen)
2. This boy is *their son* (Michael and Fanny).
3. Look at *his photos* (my friend).
4. These are *her glasses* (my grandmother).
5. *Her parents* are teachers (Kate).
6. *Their grandmother* is in Astana (the children).
7. *His passport* is on the table (Peter).
8. *Her studio* is very large (the painter).
9. *Her surname* is Smith (Mary).

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

10. *Their toys* are on the carpet (the twins).

**IV. Use the Possessive Case in the following sentences.**

1. The father of Bob.
2. The books of his children.
3. The surname of Helen.
4. The parents of John.
5. The brother of this boy.
6. The toys of the twins.
7. The profession of these men.
8. The birthday of my mother.
9. The children of these women.
10. The music of Kaldayakov.

**V. Answer the questions according to the sample.**

1. Whose sister is she (Mary)? - She is Mary's sister.
2. Whose desk is that (father)?
3. Whose daughter is Mary (Mr. Brown)?
4. Whose garden is this (my aunt)?
5. Whose car is that (my brother-in-law)?
6. Whose son is Dulat (my sister)?
7. Whose brother is Tom (his wife)?

**VI. Translate into English.**

1. Альтаир және Асқар Еркіннің ұлдары.
2. Мынау Смағұловтар әулеті.
3. Меруерт папасының қызы.
4. Нөмері 42 - пәтер Анардың үйі.
5. Аянаның апасы мұғалім.
6. Анар екі кішкентай бүлдіршіндердің анасы.
7. Меруерт Амирдің анасы.
8. Мынау кімнің телефоны?
9. Асқар кімнің інісі?
10. Аида кімнің қызы?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**VII. Answer the questions.**

*What is your son's name? - My son's name is Aslan.*

*What are your daughters' names? - My daughters' names are Alina and Diana.*

1. What is your mother's name?
2. What is your father's name?
3. What is your first teacher's name?
4. What is your favorite singer's name?
5. What is your friend's name?

**VIII. Compose and record the questions on the model. Use wildcard word.**

*It's Tom's shirt. - Is it Tom's shirt?*

*They're our children's toys. - Are they our children's toys?*

1. Maria / jeans;
2. our students / books;
3. Mike / shorts;
4. Asel / dress;
5. our teachers / time-table;
6. My mother / blouse.

**IX. Rewrite the following sentences in the negative.**

*They're Natalie's shoes. - They aren't Natalie's shoes.*

1. It's Erlan's T-shirt.
2. They're Marat's letters.
3. It's my friends' office.
4. It's Aman's book.
5. They're my uncle's clothes.
6. They're my friend's glasses.
7. It's my parents' car.
8. They're our friends' things.

**X. Translate and answer the questions.**

1. Whose sunglasses are they?
2. Whose jeans are they?
3. Whose dress is it?

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

4. Whose shoes are they?
5. Whose boots are they?
6. Whose sporting shoes are they?
7. Whose car is it?
8. Whose shorts are they?
9. Whose T-shirt is it?
10. Whose bike is it?

### Lesson 6

#### Speaking

**1. Complete the dialogue "Family life". Use these expressions:**

- |                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| • to be from some place         | • to wash up                 |
| • to live in a hostel           | • to cook                    |
| • to rent a room                | • to do one's room           |
| • to be lucky                   | • to water flowers           |
| • to be good at something       | • to keep house              |
| • to be good at doing something | • to do housework            |
| • to make tea (coffee)          | • to leave school            |
| • to switch on (TV, radio, set) | • to be ... years old        |
| • to air the room               | • it takes ... to get to ... |
|                                 | • by the way                 |
|                                 | • sorry to say               |

**2. Write a similar short paragraph about yourself and someone in your family.**

#### Reading

##### Family life

My family isn't large. My family consists of my father, mother, sister. My father's name is Berik. He is 41 but he looks much younger. He is a businessman. My dad is a well-educated and well-read person. And my mother is 37. Her name is Aiman. She is a good-looking woman. She has large brown eyes. I admire her character. She is an optimist; she is full of energy and enthusiasm.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
She is a housewife. It takes her much time and power to take care of our home. Besides, both my father and I help her with the housework. For example, I wash dishes, plates, sometimes go shopping and so on. I enjoy spending time with my family very much. We often go for walks. My mother spends much time in the kitchen - she is keen on cooking. I am very lucky that I have got such wonderful parents and, of course, I love them very much.

### Vocabulary:

1. experience- тәжірибе
2. to admire - тамсану
3. sense - сезім
4. to wash - жуу
5. to go shopping - сауда жасау

### Answer the questions:

1. What is your name?
2. Is your family large?
3. What are your father's and your mother's names?
4. How old is your father?
5. How old is your mother?

### Writing

### TEST

1. Choose the right variant:

*The shop of his friend.*

- a) His friends' shop.
- b) His friend shop.
- c) His friends shop.
- d) His friend's shop.

2. Complete the sentence:

*This is ... book.*

- a) Asem's
- b) Asem
- c) Asems'
- d) Asemes

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

3. Complete the sentence:

*Where are those ...  
dictionaries?*

- a) student's
- b) students'
- c) students
- d) students's

4. Complete the sentence:

*My ... .. are very far from  
here.*

- a) Houses of my friends.
- b) Friend's house.
- c) Friends' houses.
- d) Friends houses.

5. Complete the sentence:

*This is ... car.*

- a) His friend's
- b) His friend
- c) His friends'
- d) My friends'

6. Complete the sentence:

*These are my ...  
newspapers.*

- a) sisters
- b) sisterss
- c) sisters'
- d) sister

7. Complete the sentence:

*... .. is a policeman.*

- a) Samats' brothers
- b) Samat's brother
- c) Brother's of Samat
- d) Samats brothers

8. Complete the sentence:

*... .. is a schoolgirl.*

- a) Asels' daughters
- b) Asel's daughters
- c) Asel's daughter
- d) Asels daughter

9. Find the right equivalent:

*The answer of the student.*

- a) The student answers.
- b) The answer's student.
- c) The student's answer.
- d) The students' answer.

10. Choose the right variant:

*Aman works at ... school.*

- a) boy's
- b) boys
- c) the boy
- d) boys'

11. Choose the right variant:

*A ... future depends on her  
character.*

- a) girl's
- b) girl
- c) girls'
- d) the girls

12. Choose the right variant:

*The Wilsons are having ...  
party on Saturday.*

- a) the children
- b) child
- c) children's
- d) children

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

13. I like ... (the camera / Ann).

- a) Ann's camera
- b) Anns camera
- c) Anns camera's
- d) Ann'es camera

14. When is ... (the birthday / your sister)?

- a) the birthday 's your sister
- b) Your sister the birthday 's
- c) Your sister's the birthday
- d) Your sister's birthday

15. Here's ... (my parents) address.

- a) my parents address
- b) my parents' address
- c) my parents address'es
- d) address my parents

### Lesson 7

#### Speaking

1. Complete the dialogue "My working day". Use these expressions:

- to wash the dishes
- to lay the table
- to do the room
- to dust
- to clean the things
- to do the housework
- to help about the house
- to water the flowers
- to buy food
- to look after the small sister (brother)
- to read books
- to have supper
- to go for a walk
- to watch TV
- to play
- to meet friends
- to play computer games
- to sleep well
- to sit up
- to go to bed

2. Write 10 sentences to describe your day.

## Reading

### My Daily Routine

As a rule, I get up at half past six. I put on my dressing-gown, go into bathroom and turn on the bath taps. Good health is better than wealth, so I do my morning Exercises I get breakfast at seven-thirty and listen to the news over the radio.

I like to begin the day well, so my breakfast is always a good one. For breakfast I usually have hard-boiled eggs or an omelette, bread and butter, tea or coffee; I read my newspaper with my last cup of coffee before I leave home. Then, I say "Good-bye" to my mother, take my bag and go to the university . I don't live far from my university, so it doesn't take me long to get there. The lessons start at half past eight. Each lesson lasts for 50 minutes. The classes are over at two o'clock.

I come back home, have dinner, wash up and go shopping. I buy foodstuffs for the family. Coming back I begin to clean the house and get the vegetables ready for supper. We have supper at seven. I do my homework for the next day. It usually takes me several hours to prepare well for the lessons. In the evening, I always try to spend at least an hour at the piano. As a rule my parents and I sit and talk, watch a film on TV, read newspapers and magazines. Sometimes, we go to the cinema or to the theatre. Once or twice a month, I visit exhibitions in my home town.

I go to bed at about eleven o'clock, but my parents like to sit up late and write letters or read.

### Vocabulary:

1. daily routine [ru:ti:n] – бір күндік режим
2. to turn on - қосу
3. health - денсаулық
4. to get ... ready for... - дайындау
5. to sit up - ұйықтамау
6. to go to bed - ұйықтау
7. to have supper - кешкі ас ішу



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### Answer the questions:

1. When do you get up as a rule?
2. Why do you do your morning exercises?
3. What do you have for breakfast?
4. How long does each lesson last?
5. When do you begin to clean the house?

## GRAMMAR

### THE ARTICLE

#### Артикль

Ағылшын тілінің артиклі қазақ тілінде кездеспейтін мағыналық мүмкіншілігі бай грамматикалық, лексикалық, стилистикалық және синтаксистік қызмет атқаратын күрделі құбылыс.

Артикльдің үш түрі бар:

- 1) the - айқын, белгілі артиклі
- 2) a (an) - белгісіздік артиклі
- 3) - нөлдік артиклі

Артикльдің негізгі мағыналары

a (an) - белгісіздік артиклі – «кез келген», «белгісіз», «көптің бірі» және «бір» деген мағынадағы жекеше түрде зат есім алдында қойылып, оларды анықтайды.

Нөлдік артикль (артикль қойылмайды) - зат есім көпше түрде болған жағдайда және кейбір жағдайларда кездеседі.

The - белгілі артиклі белгілі, танымды, нақтылы, сирек кездесетін заттардың алдында, зат есімнің жекеше және көпше түрлері алдында қолданыла береді.

### THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

#### Белгісіздік артиклі

Белгісіздік артиклі a (an) - тек жекеше зат есімдермен қолданылады.

Егер сөз дауыссыз әріптен басталса онда “a” қолданылады, мысалы: a boy, a home, a tool.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Егер сөз дауысты әріптен басталса онда “an” қолданылады, мысалы: an apple, an uncle, an European, an hour.

Оның мағыналық мүмкіншіліктері келесі:

a) біреу, белгісіз біреу:

Мысалы: A man is waiting for you. - Сізді бір ер адам күтіп тұр.

b) белгісіз:

Мысалы: A person has right to enter Higher Education. - Кез келген адамның жоғарғы оқу орнына түсуге құқығы бар.

### USING THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

Белгісіздік артикльдің қолданылуы

Case of using (Қолданылатын кездері)	Examples (Мысалдар)
Санауға келетін зат сiмдердiң тек жекеше түрiнде.	Asel lives in a house. Do you need an umbrella?
2.Be, seem, become етiстiктернен кейiн.	Arman is an accountant.
3.One - (бiр) есептiк сан есiмнiң мағынасында.	Almaz became a third year student in 1998.
4.Every - әрбiр деген мағынаны бiлдiргенде.	I bought a kilo of butter.
5.Сөйлеушi заттар мен нәрселер туралы алғаш рет сөз қозғап (әңгiмелеп) тұрса.	Aidana breaks 10 or 15 dolls in a week.
6.Тыңдаушыға сөйлеушiнiң қандай зат туралы айтып тұрғаны белгiсiз бiр жағдайда.	For supper I had a sandwich and an apple. Have you got a car? Saulet is looking for a job.

### THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

#### Белгілі артикль

Белгілі артикль жекеше, сондай-ақ көпше түрдегі зат есімдердің алдында қолданылады.

Белгілі адам немесе зат жайлы сөз болса және мағынасы жағынан мынандай сөздерге (мына, сол, анау, ана) жақын болса, онда белгілі артикль қолданылады.

1. Белгілі артикльдің жиі қолданылатын жерлері:

a) отбасы иесінің әулетінің алдында

The Sarsenovs are moving to a new flat.

Сарсеновтар жаңа пәтерге көшейін деп жатыр.

b) бағытты білдіретін *to go* етістігімен тіркескен *theatre*, *cinema* деген зат есімдердің алдында:

Are you going to the theatre tomorrow?

Сіз ертең театрға барасыз ба?

c) *to play* етістігімен қолданылатын музыкалық аспаптар атаулары алдында:

to play the guitar- гитарада ойнау

d) *time* деген зат есімнің алдында.

What's the time now? - Қазір уақыт қанша?

2. Мекендік демеуліктермен:

a) *in* - заттың ішінде орналасқан орнын көрсетеді:

*in the room* - бөлменің ішінде

b) *on* - заттың бір нәрсенің үстінде орналасқанын білдіреді:

*on the shelf* - сөренің үстінде

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

## USING THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

### Белгілі артикльдің қолданылуы

Cases of using (Қолданылатын кездері)	Examples (Мысалдар)
<p>1. Заттың, нәрсенің сөйлеушілерге бұрыннан мәлім немесе ол туралы бұрын сөз болғандығын білдіргенде.</p> <p>2. Of, in-предлогтарымен тіркескен зат есімдерде.</p> <p>3. Санауға келетін зат есімдерде жекеше, көпше түрлерінде.</p> <p>4. Санауға келмейтін зат есімдердің алдында, егер олар заттың, нәрсенің арнайы, нақты мағыналарын, заттың сапасын білдірсе.</p> <p>5. Зат есімдердің алдында реттік сан есімдер келсе.</p> <p>6. Дүниедегі бір, бірегей кездесетін планета атауларының алдында.</p> <p>7. Ұлт атауларының алдында.</p> <p>8. Мұхит, теңіз, өзен, канал, тау тізбектері, аралдар мен шөл далалар атауларының алдында.</p> <p>9. Кейбір мемлекеттер мен штаттардың аттарының алдында, егер олар “republic”, “union”, “kingdom”, “states” сөздерімен тіркесіп келсе.</p> <p>10. Көпше түрде қолданылатын елдердің аттарының алдында.</p> <p>11. Университеттер (егер олар of тіркесімен келсе), музейлер, кітапханалар, қонақ үйлер, театрлар мен кино театрлар, клубтар, газеттер мен кейбір журнал аттарының алдында.</p> <p>12. Сын есімнің күшейтпелі шырайының алдында.</p> <p>13. Түгел әулетті атағанда.</p>	<p>For supper I had a sandwich and an apple. The sandwich was not nice. Give me the book.</p> <p>The price of bread is rising.</p> <p>The table is made of wood. The tables are made of wood.</p> <p>The silver of this bangle is very old. The final exams start in July. The snow is dirty.</p> <p>The tenth page. The first lesson is English on Monday. My birthday is on the 11<sup>th</sup> of April The Earth is round. The Sun rises in the East.</p> <p>The Kazakhs, the Swiss. The Atlantic Ocean, the Red Sea, the Aral Sea, the (English) Channel, the Thames, the Ertis River, the Panama Canal, the Tine Shan, the Alps, the Andes, the Bahamas. The Republic of Ireland, the United Kingdom, the United States of America, the United Arab Emirates.</p> <p>The Netherlands, the Philippines.</p> <p>The University of Lancaster (бірақ Oxford University), the British Museum, the National Gallery, the Tate Gallery, the National Library, the Kazakhstan hotel, the Odeon, the Night Club, the Yacht Club, the Economist . He is the best student in our group. I am the eldest in my family. The Zhursenbaevs family is large.</p>

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**THE ZERO ARTICLE**

Артикльдің қолданылмайтын кездері

Articles are not used (Қолданылмайтын кездері)	Examples (Мысалдар)
<p>1. Жалқы есімдердің алдында (кісі аттары).</p> <p>2. Континенттер мен кейбір елдердің аттарының алдында.</p> <p>3. Қалалар, өзендер, және тау аттарының алдында.</p> <p>4. Мейрам, фестиваль, апта, ай аттарының алдында және дәреже, лауазым, атақты білдіретін зат есімдердің алдында.</p> <p>5. Егер зат есімдер жалпы (жинақтау) мағынасында келсе.</p> <p>6. Қаратпа сөздерде.</p> <p>7. Ғылым салаларының аттарының алдында.</p> <p>8. Үй, ғимараттардың аттарының алдында</p> <p>9. Әуежай және теміржол станция атауларының алдында</p> <p>10. Оқу орындарының атауларының алдында</p> <p>11. Көше, саябақ, парк атауларының алдында</p>	<p>Aizhan, Serik, Saltanat, Mukankyzy.</p> <p>Europe, Asia, China, Japan.</p> <p>Almaty, Everest, Alatau, New York, Ararat.</p> <p>Nauryz, Christmas, March, Professor, Captain Zubov, Easter, Chief Inspector Moldabaiuly</p> <p>Dogs are friends of men. Roses are favorite flowers of women. Teachers are paid more than doctors. How old are you, young man?</p> <p>He likes literature and history but doesn't like mathematics.</p> <p>Westminster Abbey, Buckingham Palace.</p> <p>Almaty Airport , London Airport, Victoria Station. London University ,Oxford University.</p> <p>Hyde Park, Oxford Street, Abai Street, Central Park.</p>

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I. Put Definite and Indefinite articles where necessary.**

1. The text is ... easy.
2. This is ... easy text
3. ... Roses are beautiful flowers.
4. This rose is ... beautiful flower.
5. ... Mississippi is ... longest river in ... world.
6. What is ... capital of ... Kazakhstan?
7. ... London and ... Rome are big cities.
8. ... Mexico is south of ... United States of America.
9. ... Elburn is ... highest mountain in ... Caucasus.
10. ... sun is shining brightly.

**II. Fill in the blanks with a, an, the, if necessary.**

1. Sunday is ... very quite day in ... London.
2. All ... shops are closed and so are ... theatres and most of ... cinemas.
3. ... Londoners like to get out of town on ... Sundays.
4. There are ... thousands of ... cars on ... roads into ... country.
5. ... South coast is only fifty or sixty miles away and ... people like to go down to ... sea for ... day.

**III. Put down a\ an+professions.**

1. She's \_\_hairdresser.
2. In a hospital she's \_\_nurse.
3. He's \_ actor.
4. No, she's\_\_journalist.
5. I'm \_ lawyer.
6. No they're \_\_doctors.
7. They're \_\_ engineers.
8. Yes, they're \_ students.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**IV. What is my profession? Read the texts and complete the sentences.**

a) “I work inside and outside, and I work during the day or night. I drive a car or a motorbike and sometimes I walk along the street. I don’t earn a lot of money. I wear a uniform.”  
He’s\_\_\_\_\_.

b) “ I work in an office with a computer, or outside with other people. I speak other languages and I sometimes travel to different countries. I don’t wear a uniform. I work for a newspaper.” She’s\_\_\_\_\_.

c) “I wear a uniform and I work with other people. I have special qualifications, I work during the day or night, but I don’t work in a hospital.”  
He’s\_\_\_\_\_.

**V. Put in a/an where necessary.**

1. I haven’t got **watch**. (a watch )
2. Do you like **cheese**? (OK )
3. Ann never wears **hat**.
4. Are you looking for **job**?
5. Zhanat doesn’t eat **meat**.
6. My sister eats **apple** every day.
7. I am going to **party** tonight.
8. Music is **wonderful thing**.
9. Jamaica is **island**.
10. I don’t need **key**.
11. Everybody needs **food**.
12. I’ve got **good idea**.
13. Can you drive **car**?
14. Do you want **cup of coffee**?
15. I don’t like coffee without **milk**.
16. Don’t go out without **umbrella**.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**V1. Write the following Nouns in the plural.**

a book, a girl, a school, a table, a floor, a room, a sheep, a house,  
a dress, a friend, a fox, a shelf, a box, a match, a baby, a man, a  
child, a city, a wife, a roof, a tomato. a mouse, a country.

**VII. Use the Possessive Case.**

1. the eyes / the cat \_\_ *The cat's eyes.*
2. the daughter / Charles \_\_
3. the newspaper / today \_\_
4. the toys / the children \_\_
5. the new manager / the company \_\_
6. the result / the football match \_\_
7. the children / Don and Mary \_\_

**VIII. Give plural forms of the following nouns.**

a star, a boy, a baby, a plate, a flower, a bookshelf, a sofa, a  
bookcase, a man, a ball.

**IX. Fill in the blanks with a, an, the, if necessary.**

1. Look at ... sky. It is covered with ... dark clouds.
2. It was very pleasant to live in ... country in ... summer. ...  
weather was fine and it seldom rained. Summer is ... fine season.
3. There are no ... clouds in ... sky and ... air is so fresh.
4. When spring comes, ... sun shines brighter, ... snow melts, ...  
days become longer.
5. Winter is ... good time for sports.
6. On ... Sunday my friend and I usually go to ... country. We ski,  
skate, play ... snowballs and have ... very good time.
7. My friend is ... very good chess-player.

**X. Put in a/an and the where necessary.**

1. We usually have ... lunch at 1 p. m.
2. ... French people drink a lot of red wine.
3. I gave her ... bunch of flowers when she opened the door.
4. Who is ... owner of this car?
5. We went to... zoo and saw... old elephant.



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

6. The giraffe is ...tallest animal on ... Earth.

7. I like... giraffes.

## Lesson 8

### Speaking

**1. Make up a story on the topic “My day off”. Use the following words and word combinations in sentences of your own:**

- to get up
- to make the bed
- to do morning exercises
- to clean one's teeth
- to wash one's face and hands with cold water
- to dry oneself
- to have a bath
- to take a shower
- to do one's hair
- to go to school
- to have lessons
- to come back home from school
- to cook
- to prepare breakfast (dinner, supper)
- to do homework
- to wash up
- to have a rest
- to stay at home
- to go to an art exhibition
- tasty

### Reading

#### My Day off

I go to the university five days a week, so I have two days off - Saturday and Sunday (I'm lucky, because some other students have the only one day off). During the week I am very busy, so I like to have a rest on weekend.

I am not an early riser and it is a rare Saturday or Sunday when I get up before 9 o'clock. I enjoy staying in bed, when I don't have to hurry anywhere. We have late breakfast at 10 and watch TV. Usually we have something tasty: meat salad, fried potatoes, chicken, cake or pie. If the weather is fine, I usually do not stay indoors, I go outside. Often we go to the park and play there. If the weather is rainy and gloomy, I stay at home and watch TV,

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
listen to the music, read the books. After dinner we go visit our grandparents or relatives, or just simply take a nap.

In the evenings I like to watch video and music programs. Sometimes I do something special on weekends: go to an art exhibition, to the theatre, to the concert. I always go to bed late on Sundays, and Monday morning is the nastiest thing through all the week. I like weekends very much, because I can rest and gain some energy for the next week.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. lucky - сәтті
2. day off – бос уақыт
3. to enjoy - рахаттану
4. to hurry - асығу
5. gloomy –түнжыраңқы
6. tasty - дәмді
7. to take a nap - көз шырымын алу

### **Answer the questions:**

1. How many days off do you have?
2. When do you get up on Sunday?
3. What do you usually do during the weekends?
4. What do you do if the weather is sunny?
5. Do you spend a lot of time with your friends?
6. Do you watch TV a lot?
7. What time do you go to bed?
8. Do you like weekends?
9. How do you spend your leisure time?
10. Do you have a lot of time for leisure?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**TEST**

1. Choose the right variant:

Sara is ... best student in our class.

- a) the
- b) an
- c) no article
- d) a

2. Mrs. Johnson gave us a lot of ... homework.

- a) no article
- b) an
- c) the
- d) a

3. Did you answer ... fifth question?

- a) the
- b) a
- c) no article
- d) an

4. My father is also ... teacher.

- a) the
- b) an
- c) a
- d) no article

5. I forgot my pen. Can I borrow ... one from you?

- a) the
- b) an
- c) no article
- d) a

6. Next year, I will be going to ... different school.

- a) the
- b) no article
- c) an
- d) a

7. What time is ... party on Saturday?

- a) a
- b) an
- c) no article
- d) the

8. Don't lie to him! Tell him ... truth!

- a) the
- b) an
- c) no article
- d) a

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. That was ... long time ago.

- a) an
- b) the
- c) no article
- d) a

10. I broke ... plate that you gave me.

- a) the
- b) an
- c) no article
- d) a

11. ... Atlantic ocean is quite cold.

- a) the
- b) an
- c) no article
- d) a

12. She's \_\_\_\_ youngest in the family.

- a) the
- b) an
- c) no article
- d) a

13. to go to ... cinema

- a) a
- b) an
- c) no article
- d) the

14. to play ... dombyra

- a) the
- b) a
- c) no article
- d) an

15. We have ... car.

- a) the
- b) an
- c) no article
- d) a

## Lesson 9

### Speaking

#### 1. Make up dialogues on the following topics.

- a) Discussing a new flat.
- b) Furnishing a new flat.

Use **the following words and word combinations in dialogues and situations of your own:**

- in the city
- town
- village
- country
- address
- street
- house
- flat
- block of flats
- on the ground floor
- living room
- dining-room
- children's room
- kitchen
- bathroom
- hot water
- to turn on (off)
- to put out the light
- to live

2. Write some sentences about your bedroom.

### Reading

#### My Favourite Room

We live in a new 16-storeyed block of flats. It's situated in a very picturesque place. There's a big supermarket on the ground floor and it's very convenient to do everyday shopping. Our flat is on the fifth floor. It's very comfortable and well-planned. We have all modern conveniences, such as central heating, electricity, gas, cold and hot running water, and a telephone. There are three rooms, a kitchen, a bathroom, and a hall in our flat. There's also a balcony and we can enjoy a lovely view of the river.

The largest room in our flat is the living room, and we use it as a dining room, too. In the middle of the room there is a big table and six chairs around it. Opposite the window there is a wall unit with lots of books, a TV-set, and a DVD-player.

There are two comfortable armchairs and a small coffee table in the right-hand corner. There is also a sofa and an electric fire in

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

our living room. We like our living room, so in the evenings we gather there to have tea, watch TV, talk, and rest. Our kitchen is large and light. It is well-equipped. We have got a refrigerator, a freezer, a microwave oven, a coffeemaker, and a toaster. We haven't got a dishwasher yet, because it is very expensive. But I'm sure we shall buy it in the nearest future. My favourite room is the smallest room in our flat, but it is very cosy and light. There is a bed, a wardrobe, a desk, an armchair, and several bookshelves here. There is a thick carpet on the floor.

The walls in my room are light brown and there are some big posters on them. I like my room very much, but from time to time I change it round. I quite often move the bed and change the posters on the wall.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. in the centre of (in the middle of) - ортада
2. picturesque –көркем
3. hot and cold water - ыстық және суық су
4. to equip – жабдықтау
5. floor - еден
6. arm-chair – кресло
- 7.

### **Answer the questions:**

1. What is your occupation?
2. Where do you live?
3. What is there in front of the house?
4. What is there behind it?
5. What can you see in the living-room?
6. What can you see in the dining-room?
7. Have you got a study?
8. What colour is the floor?
9. What is there on the desk?
10. Is your home comfortable? Where is the TV set?
11. Are there any pictures on the walls?
12. What pieces of furniture do you have in your study?
13. What is on the floor in the bedroom?
14. Where is the gas stove in your kitchen?

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

- .....
15. Have you got a telephone?
  16. Is it convenient to have a telephone at home?
  17. Is your flat warm and light?

**GRAMMAR**

**PRONOUNS**

Есімдіктер

Есімдіктер есім сөздерді (зат есім, сын есім, сан есім) алмастырып, олардың орнына қолданылады. Олар мағынасына және сөйлемде атқаратын қызметіне қарай бірнеше топқа бөлінеді.

Singular form.		Жекеше түрі.	
Personal pronouns	Possessive pronouns	Absolute form	
I – мен You - сіз (сен) He - ол She - ол It – ол	My - менің Your - сіздің His - оның Her - оның Its –оның	Mine - менікі Yours - сіздікі (сенікі) His - оныкі Hers - оныкі Its - оныкі	
Plural form.		Көпше түрі	
We – біз You - сіздер (сендер) They – олар	Our - біздің Your - сіздердің (сендердің) Their – олардың	Ours - біздікі Yours - сіздердікі (сендердікі) Theirs - олардікі	
Nominative case Атау септік		Objective case Тәуелдік септік	

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

I – мен You - сіз (сен) He - ол She - ол It - ол We - біз You - сіздер (сендер) They – олар	Me – маған You - сіздерге (сендерге) Him - оған Her - оған Its - оған Us - бізге You - сіздерге (сендерге) Them – оларға, оларды
--	---

**Remember!** (Есте сақтаңыз!)

- 1-ші тұлғадағы есімдіктер зат есімдермен олардың анықтауышы ретінде қолданылады.  
This is my (your, his, her) office. (Жекеше түрі)  
These are our (your, their) offices. (Көпше түрі)
- 2-ші тұлғадағы есімдіктер жеке тұрып, зат есімсіз қолданылады.  
You and I have children; yours are elder than mine.
- I - мен есімдігі тек бас әріппен жазылады.
- Ағылшын тілінде “you” есімдігі сыпайы түрде де қолданылады.

**Conjugating the verb “to be”  
 (“to be” етістігінің жіктелуі)**

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>
I am You we / they are He / she / it is	I am not You / we / they are not He / she / it is not	Am I ? Are we / you / they ? Is he / she / it ?

**The verb “to be”**

<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>	
I am (I’m)	<b>from America</b>	We are (We’re)
You are (you’re)		You are (You’re)



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

He is (he's) She is (she's)		They are (They're)
--------------------------------	--	--------------------

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I. Complete with personal pronouns.**

1. ... lives in Almaty.
2. ... go into their classroom and sit down at the tables.
3. "Does ... sometimes meet his friends at the office?" "Yes ... does".
4. ... have our English in the morning.
5. ... don't learn English, ... learn French.
6. Do ... have lessons in the morning?
7. Does ... have his French in the morning or in the evening?
8. ... doesn't often write sentences on the blackboard.
9. "What do ... usually read in class?" "... usually read our text-book."

**II. Put in *my/our/your/her/its/his/their*.**

1. Do you like ... job?
2. We are going to have a party. We are going to invite all ... friends.
3. Maira is going out with ... friends this evening.
4. I want to phone Arman. Do you know ... phone number?
5. Is that ... car? "No, I haven't got a car".
6. I like football. It is ... favourite sport.
7. This is a beautiful tree. ... leaves are a beautiful colour.
8. Zhanat has a brother and a sister ... brother is 26 and ... sister is 30.

**III. Open the brackets.**

1. These are (I) Exercises.
2. Call (they) to home, please.
3. This engineers works with (we).
4. I know (he) well.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. Write these words out in your exercise-book please, and learn (they).
6. I know this girl (she) name is Dana.
7. He works with (he).
8. We have (we) lessons in the room number 10.

**IV. Make the sentences with the verb “to be”.**

1. Tommy and Billy ... babies.
2. The spoons ... on the table.
3. My friend Zhanar ... a good student.
4. The weather ... fine today.
5. My sons ... married.
6. I ... interested in this work.
7. Our expert ... a busy person.
8. Our children ... at school.
9. I ... at the lesson now.

**V. Put the following sentences in the interrogative form.**

**Write down answers to common questions.**

*Granny is in the village now - Is Granny in the village? Yes, she is. - Granny isn't in the village now.*

1. My grandparents are rather old.
2. The library is in the room 203.
3. Peter and Andrew are in group 7.
4. It is ten by my watch.
5. Mr. Black is on business.
6. I am fond of traveling.
7. The secretary is very busy at the moment.
8. These engineers are Russian .

**VI. Fill in the missing possessive pronouns.**

*We have our breakfast at 8 o'clock.*

1. She is doing ... homework.
2. We have ... English lesson in the evening.
3. He is putting on ... rain-coat.
4. I often do ... homework with ... friend.
5. This lady's surname is Sakenova. What's ... first name?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

6. Please sit down. Is it ... document?
7. They do ... morning exercises in the open air.
8. This table is too small. What's ... length?

**VII. Make true sentences with the verb "to be".**

1. I ... not at home.
2. We ... in class.
3. It ... Monday today.
4. My teacher's name ... John.
5. My mother and father... at work.
6. I ... married. 7. My grandmother ... seventy-five years old.
7. Marat and Saken ... my brothers.
8. We ... in the coffee bar. We ... in the classroom.

**VIII. Give negative and interrogative forms and translate the sentences.**

1. That's Nick's bag.
2. These are my cables.
3. This country is rich in coal.
4. I know that woman.
5. These are Mary's children.
6. That's my form.

**IX. Answer the following questions using the following word-combinations.**

*at the wall, in front of, in the left-(right)-hand corner, to the right of, on the left, to the left, to the left of, in the centre of, in the middle of, at the opposite wall.*

1. Where is the dining-room?
2. Where is the wardrobe?
3. Where are the chairs?
4. Where is the TV set?
5. Where is the dressing table?
6. Where is the sofa?
7. Where is the sideboard?
8. Where are the pictures?
9. Where is the standard-lamp?

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
10. Where are the arm-chairs?

### **X. Make up sentences according to the pattern.**

Pattern: 1. *A kitchen - is a room where we cook meals.*

*A dining-table- is a piece of furniture at which we have meals.*

a) a bedroom, a study, a wardrobe, a sideboard, a writing- table, a bookcase, a bookshelf, a divan-bed.

b) to sleep, to work, to keep clothes, to keep glassware and dishes, to write and read, to keep books.

## **Lesson 10**

### **Speaking**

**Draw a plan of your flat or room and describe them according to the plan. Use the following words and word combinations in dialogues and situations of your own:**

- to be of one's own
- modern conveniences
- hot and cold water
- to be on the top floor
- to have a house warming party
- to furnish a flat
- in the centre of (in the middle of)
- to the right (left) of
- on the right (left)
- chute for refuse
- to be in the second storey
- gas-stove
- a piece of furniture
- standard-lamp
- a drawing-room (sitting room)
- to put
- to place
- to move to a new
- dressing table
- night table

Write a similar description of your house or flat in about (100) words.

### **Reading**

#### **My sister's flat**

My sister left her Institute two years ago and went to work in Astana. She's a manager and works in a firm. She got a very comfortable flat last month in a new block of flats. It's on the third floor. I got a letter from my sister on the fifth of March with

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
several pictures of the city and her flat. This is a picture of my sister's flat. Look at it. There is a study and a bedroom in it, but there isn't a sitting-room or dinning-room. She has a living-room and she uses it as a sitting-room and a dinning-room. There's also a kitchen and a bathroom in her flat, but you can't see them in this picture. This is her living-room. The walls in this room are yellow. The ceiling's white and the floor are brown. You can see a square table in the middle of the room. There's a vase of flowers on it. There's an armchair and a standard-lamp in the corner. There's also a piano in the room. My sister plays the piano very well. She loves music. To the right of the piano you can see a door. It's open.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. bed - төсек
2. book case - кітап шкафы
3. bookshelves - кітап сөрөсі
4. TV set - теледидар

### **Answer the questions:**

1. Have you got a flat or a house?
2. What's your address?
3. Do you have a room of your own?
4. Is it large? On what floor is it?
5. On which floor is it better to live on?
6. How many rooms are there in your flat?
7. What modern conveniences are there in your flat?
8. Which is the largest room in your flat?
9. What furniture have you got in your living room?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**TEST**

1. Find the personal pronoun for the underlined words:

Aigul is a student.

- a) she
- b) we
- c) he
- d) I

2. Find the personal pronoun for the underlined words:

Marat and Aman read books.

- a) I
- b) we
- c) she
- d) they

3. Find the personal pronoun for the underlined words:

My brother works at an office.

- a) he
- b) we
- c) you
- d) she

4. Find the personal pronoun for the underlined words:

My friend and I like skating.

- a) they
- b) we
- c) he
- d) I

5. Find the personal pronoun for the underlined words:

Bob spent his weekend at home.

- a) they
- b) she
- c) he
- d) we

6. Choose the right variant:

\_\_\_\_\_ husband is a travel agent.

- a) hers
- b) her
- c) mine
- d) she's

7. Choose the right variant:

\_\_\_\_\_ TV-set is good.

- a) hers
- b) his
- c) he
- d) ours

8. Choose the right variant:

I do \_\_\_\_\_ homework.

- a) mine
- b) yours
- c) my
- d) me

9. Choose the right variant:

You have a nice hat. It's \_\_\_\_\_ hat.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

a) my

b) her

c) your

d) their

10. Choose the right variant:

*They bought many books.*

*They're \_\_\_\_\_ books.*

a) their

b) there

c) her

d) his

11. \_\_\_\_\_pencil is broken.

Can I borrow \_\_\_\_\_?

a) mine, yours

b) your, mine

c) my, yours

d) yours, mine

12. Am I smart? Yes, ... are smart.

a) we

b) you

c) I

d) they

13. Is your mother from Mexico? Yes, ... is from Mexico.

a) she

b) you

c) he

d) we

14. Are those cars for sale? Yes, ... are for sale.

a) she

b) you

c) he

d) they

15. Was the toy expensive?

No, ... was not expensive.

a) they

b) you

c) we

d) it

## Lesson 11

### Speaking

**Prepare and tell the story about hobbies. Use the following words and word combinations in sentences of your own:**

- to spend one's holidays in the country (at the seaside)
- to camp out
- to put up a tent
- to have a camp-fire (a picnic)
- to sleep in the open
- to go on an excursion
- to have a party

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

- to go to the picture gallery
- museum of fine arts
- work of art
- artist
- painter
- to draw (paint)
- drawing (painting)
- to collect
- collection
- to be interested in music
- to collect books
- to take photographs
- to knit

2. Construct 10 questions to the text.

### Reading

#### Hobbies

What is a hobby? It is what you can and like to do, when you have free time. We choose a hobby according to our character and taste. When we have a hobby our life becomes more interesting. Very often our hobby helps us to choose our future profession because we learn a lot of new things. Many people are interested in music. They collect records. Others like to read and collect books. People living in cities and towns like to be closer to nature, and they spend their free time in the country. Some of us go on hikes, some like to work in their gardens, take photographs or knit. Both grown-ups and children are fond of playing different computer games. It has become one of the numerous hobbies. I have got a hobby too. My name is Samal. Sometimes I have got some free time. As my hobby is cooking I like to make cakes and pies. My cakes are very tasty, but I like pies best of all. I'll tell you how I make pies with cabbage. First of all I take a head of cabbage, cut and put it into a frying-pan. Then I take carrot and peel it. By the way I have a very comfortable grater at home. I like to use it when I make my pies. I usually grate carrot, onion using my favorite grater. I put grated carrot into the frying-pan, then I salt cabbage and carrot to my taste, mix them and add some water. Then I stew these vegetables in the frying –pan. I usually buy some paste for my pies. I cut up paste, roll it and make small pies. Then I put pies with stewed cabbage into the oven. It takes



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
twenty minutes to take them. My parents and friends like to eat my pies. I advise you to make such pies and I hope that you'll like them too.

### Vocabulary:

1. tasty - дәмді
2. to peel - көкеністі тазалау
3. to cut - турау, кесу
4. pie - тәтті тоқаш
5. to stew - қуыру
6. to bake - пісіру

### Answer the questions:

1. You like cooking, don't you?
2. Do you prefer to make or buy pies?
3. Have you got a good oven in the kitchen?
4. Who helps you to make cakes and pies?
5. Do you want to be a cook?

## GRAMMAR

### THERE IS / THERE ARE

#### сөз орамдары

Заттың, нәрсенің, атаудың белгілі бір жерде тұрғанын, бар екенін білдіру үшін жекеше түрде *there is*, көпше түрде *there are* қолданылады. Сөйлем *there is/are* сөз орамдарынан басталады да, қазақ тіліне мекен пысықтауыштан бастап аударылады.

Мысалы: *There is a pen on the desk.* - Үстелдің үстінде қалам жатыр.

*There are two books there.* - Ана жерде екі кітап бар.

Сұраулы сөйлем:

*Is there a pencil on the desk?* - *Yes, there is;* - *No, there isn't.*

*Are there pens on the desk?* - *Yes, there are;* - *No, there aren't.*

Болымсыз сөйлем:

*There is no book in the bag.* - Сөмкенің ішінде кітап жоқ.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
*There are no pens on the desk.* - Үстелдің үстінде қаламдар жоқ.

There is, there are сөз орамдары сөйлемдерде сан, мөлшерді білдіретін сөздердің алдында қолданылады.

Мысалы: *There are not many pens on the desk. There are not six spoons on the table.*

### Writing

### Exercises

#### I. Fill in the text.

1. (A bed, pillow, blanket, sheet, a lamp, a table, brushes, combs, a stool). In the bedroom there is ... near the wall.
2. There are two white ... on the bed.
3. There is a blue ... and a white ... on the bed.
4. There is ... near the bed.
5. There is ... near the window. There are ... and ... on the table.  
There is ... near the table.

#### II. Give negative and interrogative forms and translate the sentences.

1. There is a village near the station.
2. There are many people in the park.
3. There is a loose-leaf calendar on the wall.
4. There are green leaves on the tree.
5. There is a new shop in our street.
6. There is much electric light in this garage.

#### III. Put down the verb to be.

1. There...schools in this street.
2. There...flowers here in winter.
3. ... there a new building in your town?
4. There...tea in the cup.
5. There...an apple on the plate.
6. There...three parts in London.
7. There...Big Ben near the Parliament.

#### IV. Put down there is / there are.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

1. ... .. a house on a hill.
2. ... .. an attic in the house.
3. ... .. a red roof on the house and a balcony.
4. Downstairs ... .. a kitchen and a living room.
5. In the kitchen ... .. a table but there aren't any chairs.
6. On the table ... .. a lot of cups and some saucers.
7. ... .. a cupboard and there are a lot of mugs in it.

### **V. Expand the brackets by selecting the form of a verb and underline the subject and predicate.**

1. There (is, are) three windows in my classroom.
2. There (is, are) a table and four chairs in my living-room.
3. There (is, are) a blackboard, four desks and five chairs in our class-room.
4. There (is, are) a text-book and two exercise-books on the table.
5. There (is, are) two shops and a cinema in my street.
6. There (is, are) a large table in my room.

### **VI. Fill in the missing articles (a, an, the), where necessary.**

1. Her friends are ... students.
2. They learn ... English.
3. They usually have ... classes in ... morning.
4. I have my ... English in ... evening.
5. They do ... lot of Exercises.
6. I do my ... exercises at ... home.
7. They often write on ... blackboard.
8. Arman lives in ... Almaty.
9. ... Astana is ... capital of Kazakhstan.
10. My sister is ... student.

### **VII. Add question-tags to the following sentences.**

Pattern: *There is a sofa at the wall ... ?*

*There is a sofa at the wall, isn't there?*

1. Your flat is on the second floor... ?
2. There is little furniture in your room ... ?
3. The TV set is in the left-hand corner ... ?
4. The curtains in your bedroom are light-blue ... ?

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. There are all modern conveniences in your flat...?
6. The telephone is in the hall ... ?
7. There are many English books on the shelves ...?
8. The drawing-room is the best room in your flat ... ?
9. There is much air in your flat ... ?
10. The wallpaper is light-green in your study...?

### **VIII. Answer the following questions.**

1. Where are you going to place the piano?
2. In what corner are you going to place the TV set?
3. What are you going to put between the windows ?
4. What are you going to hang on the walls?
5. What are you going to put on the floor?
6. Where are you going to keep all your books?
7. What do you want to put at the opposite wall?
8. Where is the place for the standard-lamp?
9. What are you going to place between the sofa and the wardrobe?
10. What furniture do you want to have in the kitchen?

### **IX. Translate.**

1. There are not photographs in this book.
2. There are pictures on the wall.
3. There is a power station near our village.
4. There are books on that table.
5. There was a note for him there.
6. There were many students in the museum.

### **X. Complete the sentences.**

1. The book is new. ... contents is rather interesting.
2. She is a nice girl. What's ... name?
3. I'm Kamila. ... family is large.
4. He has a lot of friends. ... friends are also students.
5. The Sarsenovs have a car. ... car is expensive.
6. You are doing well. ... marks are always good.
7. We have a big garden. ... garden is young.
8. We have a cat. ... character is kind.

## Lesson 12

### Speaking

**Be ready to talk on one of the following topics.**

1. What is a hobby?
2. My sister's hobby.

**Use the following words and word combinations in sentences of your own:**

- to go to the disco
- to dance
- to take part in the concert
- to enjoy
- to listen to the radio
- to speak on the radio
- to hear it on (over) the radio
- to watch TV
- to see the match on TV
- to go on an excursion
- to have a party
- to go to the picture gallery
- to draw (paint), drawing (painting)
- to collect, collection
- to repair
- old coins
- hobby
- useful
- tape-recorder
- wonderful

### Reading

#### My Friend's Hobby

Hobby is a favourite occupation of a person in his free time. I have many friends. They are very different and they have different kinds of hobbies. One of my girl-friends, for example, likes to knit very much. Another girl-friend of mine spends all her free time sewing things: skirts, blouses, dresses. She makes it nicely and she always looks fine.

One of my friends likes to make everything with his own hands. He can repair an iron, a radio-set, or a tape-recorder. I think it's a very good hobby. Many people are very fond of collecting. Some collect old coins, others collect post-cards. As for me, my hobby is collecting stamps. Now I have 5 albums full of stamps. I like to sit at the table in the evening and arrange new stamps in the albums or just look through the stamps. Each stamp has a story to

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
tell about distant countries and new people. I see pictures of people, birds and animals which I have never seen. Kings and presidents pass before my eyes and I can follow the history of whole nations.

My hobby is not only wonderful but is also very useful.

### Vocabulary:

1. to knit - тоқу
2. numerous - көптеген
3. take photographs - суретке түсіру
4. stamp - марка
5. to repair - жөндеу жұмыстары
6. different - әр-түрлі
7. old coins - көне ақшалар

### Answer the questions:

1. What is a hobby?
2. Does your life become more interesting if you have a hobby?
3. What kind of hobbies do you know?
4. What is the most popular hobby among Englishmen?
5. What is your hobby?
6. Will your hobby help you in your future life?
7. Are you fond of playing computer games?
8. What is one of the numerous hobbies in our country?

### Writing

### TEST

1. Choose the right variant:  
\_\_\_ *much milk in the bottle.*

- a) There is
- b) There are
- c) There will
- d) There does

2. Choose the right variant:  
\_\_\_ ... *there any magazines on the shelf?*

- a) Has
- b) Are
- c) Do
- d) Have

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

3. Choose the right variant:

*How much coffee \_\_\_ there  
in the cup?*

- a) have
- b) will
- c) has
- d) is

4. Choose the right variant:

*\_\_\_ a good clothes shop not  
far from here.*

- a) There have
- b) There are
- c) There is
- d) There will

5. Choose the right variant:

*There ... few things in our  
bedroom now.*

- a) is
- b) are
- c) am
- d) \_\_\_

6. Find the right variant:

*... a nice park in our city:*

- a) There are
- b) There is
- c) There be
- d) Was there

7. To made the sentence:

*There is -1; a large -2; in  
front -3; park -4; of -5; our -  
6; house-7*

- a) 1,2,4,3,5,6,7.
- b) 6,4,1,3,5,2,7.
- c) 1,2,3,4,5,5,7
- d) 7,3,2,1,5,6,4.

8. Choose the correct  
answer.

*Is \_\_\_\_\_ a post office near  
here, please?*

- a) there
- b) it
- c) that
- d) this

9. Find the right variant:

*There ... many pictures on  
the wall.*

- a) do
- b) is
- c) are
- d) am

10. Find t

he right variant:

*There ... a large table in my  
room.*

- a) is
- b) be
- c) am
- d) were

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

11. Find the right variant:

*There ... three windows in my room.*

- a) is
- b) are
- c) be
- d) am

13. How many books ... there on the table?

- a) are
- b) is
- c) was
- d) be

12. Find the right variant:

*There ... a table and four chairs in my sister's room.*

- a) to be
- b) are
- c) were
- d) is

14. Find the right variant:

*How many pages ... there in this book?*

- a) do
- b) is
- c) are
- d) be

15. Find the right variant:

*... .. two books on the table.*

- a) There is
- b) There are
- c) There was
- d) It are

## Lesson 13

### Speaking

**Make up a dialogue "My everyday meals" using the following words and word combinations given below:**

- to be at table
- to have breakfast (dinner, supper)
- to have tea (coffee)
- to drink milk (coke, juice, mineral water)
- to eat soup
- meat
- fish
- sausage
- porridge
- cheese
- egg
- butter
- bread (white, brown)
- cake



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

- sugar
- ice-cream
- sweets
- chocolate
- salt
- jam

Describe how you cook your favourite dish.

### Reading

#### My family's Meals

My family isn't large. It consists of four members. But each member of our family has his own tastes and interests. For example, my brother is fond of sports. So early in the morning he goes jogging.

That's why he has nothing to eat before it, because it would be bad for him to eat before Exercises But when he comes back, he has a shower and is more than ready for breakfast. He always needs a cup of coffee to really wake him up. His breakfast usually consists of a bowl of cereal with milk and sugar. This he follows by toasts and juice. My father eats the same as my brother. My mother has a lighter breakfast of just yoghurt and a grapefruit. As for me, a cup of tea is enough for breakfast. And my mother sometimes scolds me for it, because it's important to have a really goods breakfast. We don't have our main meal at lunch time. My father takes sandwiches with him to work. To be healthy, he also eats fruit. My mother is able to be more varied in her lunches, because she is a housewife. It means that she can prepare what she likes. Her favourite dish is roast meat. As she likes to bake, there is always something tasty at home. Our evening meal is usually eaten at 7 o'clock. The main course is often meat with vegetables. Sometimes we eat pizza or pasta with delicious sauce. We try to eat our main meal together. In our busy lives it is the one time of day when we sit down and have a good talk.

#### Answer the questions:

1. Is your family large?
2. What do your family have for breakfast?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

- .....
3. Do you have your main meal together?
  4. When do you have your main meal?
  5. What do you have for supper?

**GRAMMAR**

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**

Өздік есімдіктер

<b>Reflexive pronouns</b>	<b>Өздік есімдіктер</b>
Myself – өзім	Ourselves - өзіміз
Yourself - өзің (өзіңіз)	Yourselves - өздерің (өздеріңіз)
Himself – өзі Herself - өзі Itself – өзі	Themselves - өздері

**DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS**

Сілтеу есімдіктері

<b>Singular form (Жекеше түрі)</b>	<b>Plural form (Көпше түрі)</b>
This - мынау, осы	These - мынау, осы
That – анау	Those – анау

This, that сілтеу есімдіктері септік жағынан өзгермейді. Сөз алдына артикль қолданылмайды.

a) This - мына, осы деген мағынаны білдіріп, жекеше түрде қолданылады.

These - мынау, осы (көпше түрі).

b) That - анау деген мағынаны білдіріп, жекеше түрде қолданылады.

Those - анау (көпше түрі).

Мысалы: This is a book. - These are books.

That is a house. - Those are houses.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**Conjugating the verb «to have got»**  
**«to have got» етістігінің жіктелуі**

<b>Singular</b> (Жекеше)	<b>Plural</b> (Көпше)
Affirmative sentences (Болымды сөйлем)	
I have got a dog You have got a dog He has got a dog She has got a dog	We have got a dog You have got a dog They have got a dog
Negative sentences (Болымсыз сөйлем)	
I haven't got a dog You haven't got a dog He hasn't got a dog She hasn't got a dog	We haven't got a dog You haven't got a dog They haven't got a dog
Interrogative sentences (Сұраулы сөйлем)	
Have I got a dog? Have you got a dog? Has he got a dog? Has she got a dog?	Have we got a dog? Have you got a dog? Have they got a dog?

To have етістігі негізгі, көмекші және модаль мағыналарын береді.

1. To have есімдік немесе зат есімнен кейін тұрса және одан кейін осы екеуінің біреуі тұрса, онда ол негізгі етістіктің қызметін атқарып, бар деген мағына береді.

Мысалы: She has a book. - Онда кітап бар.

2. Егер to have етістігінен кейін инфинитив тұрса, онда to have модаль тиісті (амалдың жоқтығынан) міндеттілік деген мағына береді.

Мысалы: I have to go. - Мен баруға тиістімін (міндеттімін).

Сұраулы сөйлемде to have етістігі бастауыштың алдында қойылады.

Have you got a wife? - Yes, I have. No, I have not.

The verbs “have/have got”

(“Have”/ “Have got” етістіктері)

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
1. Have / have got етістіктерінің мағыналары бір. Have got ауызекі тілде көбірек қолданылады да, have жазуда қолданылады.

Мысалы: Have you got a light?

The prime Minister has a meeting with the President today

Have / have got - бір нәрсеге ие болу, иелену деген мағыналарды білдіреді.

Мысалы: I have/have got a car. She has/has got three children.

## Writing

### Exercises

#### 1. Put the following phrases in the plural.

This tea-cup, this egg, that wall, that picture, this foot, that mountain, this lady, that window, this man, that match, this knife.

#### II. Translate into Kazakh.

1.These are two gas-cookers. 2.Those houses are new and nice.  
3.These are their gas-cookers.4.Those are kettles. 5.These cups are on the gas-cooker. 6.Those are my knives. 7.Those vases are on the table. 8.These tables are in the kitchen.

#### III. Write in the negative form.

1.These are three books. 2.Those books are old. 3.These are her books. 4.Those bags are on the desk. 5.Those are four armchairs. 6.These armchairs are brown. 7.Those are our teachers. 8.That box is in the bedroom. 9.It is a small window. 10.It is his garden. 11.The garden is large and nice.

#### IV. Write questions : Is this/that your ...? or Are these / those your...?

book, watch, glasses, keys, umbrella, flat, fridge, houses, bedroom.

#### V. Write questions.

1. (you /a dog?) Have you got a dog?
2. (your brother /a car?)
3. (you /a friend?)

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

4. (your mother /a watch?)

5. (your sister /a bike?)

6. (Arman /a camera?)

**VI. Make your own sentences on these patterns.**

1. We've got a cabinet. It's white.

2. We've got five telephones. They are black.

**VII. Write down five things that you have got.**

*Example I have got a computer.*

a) five things that you haven't got.

b) five things that your best friend has got.

**VIII. Rewrite the sentences in the plural.**

1. My son has a toy.

2. Mr. White has an English book.

3. Tom has a new pen.

4. Vera had a letter from her friends this afternoon.

5. She often has a visitor.

6. I have a friend in Austria.

7. We have a newspaper with us.

8. Our group has a lesson in the morning.

**IX. Write the words in two columns under the rule of countable nouns and uncountable nouns.**

Many      Much

salad, plant, vitamin, coffee, color, food, game, lemonade, coal,

ice cream, porridge, pilot.

**X. Put down the Pronoun.**

1. Did you come alone?

No, ... did not come alone.

2. Are you and your brother flying to Astana tomorrow?

Yes, ... flying to Astana tomorrow.

3. Does your girlfriend always complain?

No, ... doesn't always complain.

4. Does your wife's family like you?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

No, ... don't like me.

5. Does the CD player work?

No, ... doesn't work.

## Lesson 14

### Speaking

**Make up a story on the topic “My everyday meals”. Use the following words and word combinations in short dialogues or situations of your own:**

- cabbage
- fruit
- apple
- lemon
- orange
- banana
- dish
- spoon
- fork
- knife
- a piece of
- a spoonful
- a teaspoonful of
- to order pizza
- Help yourself to the salad.
- Pass me the salt, please.
- Some more cake?
- It's lovely (nice)!
- We'll have fish and chips, please.
- I can't possibly eat any more.

Make up a menu for: a dinner for your best friend, your favourite lunch.

Name five kinds of: meat dishes, soup, dishes taken for breakfast.

### Reading

#### Meals and Cooking

When we cook, we boil, roast, fry or stew our food. We boil eggs, meat, chicken, fish, milk, water and vegetables. We fry eggs, fish and vegetables. We stew fish, meat, vegetables or fruit. We roast meat or chicken. We put salt, sugar, pepper, vinegar and mustard into our food to make it salted, sweet, sour or simply tasty. Our food may taste good or bad or it may be tasteless. The usual meals in England are breakfast, lunch, tea and dinner or, in simpler

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
houses, breakfast, dinner, tea and supper. For breakfast English people mostly have porridge or corn-flakes with milk or cream and sugar, bacon and eggs, marmalade with buttered toast and tea or coffee. For a change they can have a boiled egg, cold ham, or fish. English people generally have lunch about one o'clock. At lunch time in a London restaurant one usually finds a mutton chop, or steak and chips, or cold meat or fish with potatoes and salad, then a pudding or fruit to follow. Afternoon tea can hardly be called a meal. It is a substantial meal only in well-to-do families. It is between five and six o'clock. It is rather a sociable sort of thing, as friends often come in then for a chat while they have their cup of tea, cake or biscuit. In some houses dinner is the biggest meal of the day. But in great many English homes, the midday meal is the chief one of the day, and in the evening there is usually a much simpler supper — an omelette, or sausages, sometimes bacon and eggs and sometimes just bread and cheese, a cup of coffee or cocoa and fruit.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. to cook – тамақ дайындау
2. to boil – қайнату
3. to roast – қуыру
4. to fry – қуыру, қақтау
5. to stew – бұға пісіру
6. vinegar – сірке суы
7. mustard – қыша

### **Answer the questions:**

1. How many meals a day do you have?
2. What do you usually have for breakfast?
3. Do you eat much in the morning?
4. Do you have your breakfast alone or with your family?
5. Who cooks your breakfast?
6. Do you ever have your meals at a café or at a restaurant?
7. When did you go to a restaurant last time?
8. What did you order?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. How much did you pay for your meal?  
10. Did you tip the waiter?  
11. How long (how much time) did you stay at the restaurant?

**Writing**

**TEST**

1. Choose the right variant.

This, that сілтеу

есімдіктері.

... is my flat and ... is  
your hostel across the street.

- a) that/that  
b) that/this  
c) this/this  
d) this/that

2. These, those сілтеу

есімдіктері.

Look at ... black clouds.

- a) this  
b) these  
c) those  
d) that

3. You have to do it ... .

- a) yourself  
b) myself  
c) ourselves  
d) itself

4. The police officers

couldn't do it ... .

- a) himself  
b) themselves  
c) yourself  
d) myself

5. Why can't she tell me ... ?

- a) herself  
b) himself  
c) yourself  
d) myself

6. You only think about ... .

- a) herself  
b) yourself  
c) ourselves  
d) themselves

7. I have to learn to respect

... .

- a) myself  
b) yourself  
c) ourselves  
d) themselves

8. They ... many children.

- a) has  
b) am  
c) have  
d) is



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. Altair ... many toys

- a) have
- b) are
- c) is
- d) has

10. Choose the right variant

... you got a grandmother  
and a grandfather?

- a) has
- b) are
- c) have
- d) is

11. Choose the right variant

We have many friends, ...?

- a) haven't we?
- b) have I?
- c) hasn' he?
- d) has we?

12. Choose the right variant

She has a camera, ... ?

- a) have I?
- b) has we?
- c) have she?
- d) hasn't she ?

13. ... she got a car?

- a) have
- b) has
- c) to have
- d) haven't

14. We have to go to the  
party, ...?

- a) have I?
- b) has we?
- c) have she?
- d) haven't we?

15. He has a car, ...?

- a) have I?
- b) has we?
- c) have she?
- d) hasn't he

## Lesson 15

### Speaking

1. Compose your own dialogue.

2. Learn the following words and word combinations. Give their Kazakh equivalents.

- to learn different subjects
- to be on duty
- to make reports
- to go on an excursion
- to take part in sports competitions
- to attend school
- to teach (train, instruct)
- to have winter holidays
- to be good at
- to make progress
- to take an examination
- to pass the examination
- to go up to the front
- to learn by heart
- to practice English,
- to write a dictation (a composition)
- to do a translation
- to look up a word (expression) in a dictionary
- to make mistakes
- to correct the mistakes

### Reading

#### English is the Language of Communication

«Do you speak English?» - with this phrase begins the conversation between two people, that speak different languages and want to find a common language.

It's very good when you hear: «Yes, I do», and start talking. People of different countries and nations have to get along well with the progress in world trade and technology as well as with each other. So it is very useful to learn foreign languages. Knowledge of foreign languages helps us to develop friendship and understanding among people.

English is very popular now. It's the language of computers, science, business, sport and politics. It's spoken all over the world. It is the official language of the United Kingdom, Ireland, the United States of America, Canada, Australia. There are more

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
than 750 million speakers of English in the world. Speaking a foreign language you can read papers, magazines and original books by great writers, watch satellite TV programs. If you like travelling you can go anywhere without being afraid that other people will not understand you. English is very important to find a good job.

### Vocabulary:

1. conversation - әңгіме
2. common - ортақ
3. world trade - әлемдік сауда
4. to develop - даму
5. to be afraid - қорқу

### Answer the questions:

1. Do you like to speak English?
2. How many years did you study English?
3. Is it useful to learn a foreign language?
4. Is English the official language in the U.S.A.?
5. Does English help you to make friends?

## GRAMMAR

### THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

Белгісіздік есімдіктер

**Some, any** белгісіздік есімдіктері кез келген заттың белгісіз санын көрсетеді. **Some, any** есімдіктері зат есімнің алдындағы анықтауыш болады, бұл жағдайда артикль қолданылмайды.

**Some** есімдігі тек қана болымды сөйлемде қолданылып, зат есімнің алдында, жекеше түрде, *кейбір, қандай да* деген мағына береді. Мысалы, *some menu - қандай да бір мәзір*. Ал көпше түрде *бірнеше* деген мағына береді.

Мысалы, *some waiters - бірнеше даяшылар*. Есептелмейтін зат есімнің алдында аударылмайды. Мысалы, *some meat - ет (біраз мөлшерде)*.

**Any** есімдігі *болымсыз және сұраулы сөйлемдерде* қолданылады. Мысалы: *Are there any hard drinks in the*

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
restaurants? - Ресторанда қандай да болмасын спирт ішімдіктері бар ма?

Болымсыз сөйлемде аны кез келген, қайсысы болса да деген мағынаны білдіреді. Мысалы: I like any fruit. - Мен жемістің кез келгенін жақсы көремін.

Аны есімдігі болымды сөйлемде кез келген, әр түрлі, кім болса да деген мағынаны білдіреді. Мысалы: Give me any book you have. - Маған өзіңізде бар кез келген кітапты беріңізіші.

Оны белгісіздік есімдігі белгісіз жақты білдіру үшін сөйлемде бастауыштың қызметін атқару мүмкін, мұндай сөйлемдер жақсыз сөйлемдер болып аударылады. Мысалы:

*One says...* айтады, айтып жүр.

*One must not...* - болмайды.

*One needn't* - керекі жоқ, қажет емес.

*One* есімдігі зат есімді қайталамас үшін соның орнына қолданылады. Мысалы: *I don't like this white dress, show me that red one.* - Маған ақ көйлек ұнамайды, ана бір қызылды көрсетіңізіші.

Болымды сөйлем	some (any) (бірнеше)	something (anything) (бір нәрсе)	somebody (anybody) (біреу, әлдекім)	someone (anyone) (әлде біреу)
Болымсыз сөйлем	(not) any no (кез келген)	(not) anything nothing (бірдене)	(not) anybody nobody (біреу, әлдекім)	(not) anyone no one (ешкім)
Жалпы сұрақ	Any (бірнеше)	anything (бірдене)	anybody (біреу)	anyone (біреу)
Арнаулы сұрақ	Some (бірнеше)	something (бірдене)	somebody (біреу)	someone (әлде біреу)
Өтініш	some (бірнеше)	something (бірдене)	somebody (біреу)	someone (әлде біреу)

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### QUANTITATIVE PRONOUNS

Мөлшерді білдіретін есімдік

**Many, much, a lot of** - көп, көптеген

**Few, little** - аз, өте аз, көп емес

**A few, a little** - аздаған, аздап, біраз сөздерінің қолданылуы:

I. Санауға келетін зат есімдермен көпше түрде

#### **Many**

There are many students in the class.

Сыныпта көп студенттер отыр.

How many books were there?

Ол жерде неше кітап бар?

We haven't got many books.

Бізде көп кітап жоқ.

#### **A lot of**

There are a lot of animals in the zoo. Хайуанаттар паркінде көптеген жануарлар бар.

#### **Few, a few**

There are (very) few desks in the classroom.

Сыныпта парталар өте аз (көп емес, жеткілікті мөлшерде емес).

There are a few flowers in my garden. Менің бақшамда аздаған гүлдер бар.

II. Санауға келмейтін зат есімдермен: much little есімдіктері қолданылады. a lot of есімдігі көп деген мағынаны білдіреді де, саналатын және саналмайтын зат есімдердің алдына қойыла береді.

There isn't much snow in the street.

Көшеде қар аз (көп емес).

How much money have you got?

Сіздің қанша ақшаңыз бар.

There is a lot of sugar in my tea.

Менің шайымда қант көп.

#### **A little, little**

I know (very) little about him. Мен ол туралы өте аз білемін. (көп білмеймін, жеткілікті түрде білмеймін).

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
I know a little about him. Мен ол туралы аздап білемін  
(жеткілікті мөлшерде).

### Writing

#### Exercises

#### 1. Answer the following questions according to the pattern.

Pattern: Are there many books in this bookcase?

*Yes, there are many. (No, there aren't. There are few.)*

1. Are there many chairs in the room?
2. Are there many flowers in the vase?
3. Are there many spoons on the table?
4. Are there many windows in your flat?
5. Are there many trees in your garden?
6. Are there many children in the hall?

#### II. Answer the following questions according to the pattern .

Pattern: Is there much snow in the street?

*Yes, there is much. (No, there isn't. There is little.)*

1. Is there much milk in the jug?
2. Is there much bread on the plate?
3. Is there much wine in the bottle?
4. Is there much water in your glass?
5. Is there much coffee in your cup?
6. Is there much butter on the plate?
7. Are there very many benches in the park?
8. Is there much tea in the pot?
9. Are there many trees in your street?
10. Is there much sugar in the sugar-pot?
11. Are there many desks in your classroom?
12. Is there much chalk on the teacher's table?

#### III. Insert suitable nouns: apples, books, boys, bread, flowers, grass, leaves, time, snow, sugar, water.

1. I have too much ... in my tea.
2. He has little... today.
3. You have very many... in your room.
4. There is too little ... on the table.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. I have few ... in my garden.
6. There is little ... on the square.
7. There are not many ... on the trees.
8. There is very much ... in this well.
9. We have too few ... in our class.
10. There is much ... on the ground.
11. There is little...in this ditch.
12. There are many... on the plate.

### **IV . Insert correct forms of the verb to be.**

1. There... many people in the street.
2. There....much water in the ditch.
3. There ... little ink in my pen.
4. There ... few boys on the playground.
5. There ... many birds on the tree.
6. There... little milk in the bottle.
7. There... only few desks in the classroom.
8. There ... so much fresh air here!
9. There ... little grass in his garden.
10. There... many children on the ice.
11. There... much paper on her desk.
12. There... little sand on the beach.

### **V.Insert much, many, little, few, a little, a few.**

1. There is ...snow on the roof.
2. He has .... English books.
3. There are ... flowers in this vase. Take ... for your wife.
4. Give me ... butter, please.
5. Pass me the jug, please. There is ... milk in my coffee.
6. There are ... pies on the plate. Take ... for your children.
7. Now there is ... water in the river.
8. Look! There are so ... people on the ice!
9. Open the window! There is so ... air in the room.
10. I have very ... books. You may take ... of them.
11. Give me ... cheese, please.
12. I can't drink this tea. There is too ... sugar in it.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### VI. Insert *some*, *any* or *no*.

1. There are ... pictures in the book.
2. Are there ... new students in your group?
3. There are ... old houses in our street.
4. Are there ... English textbooks on the desks? -Yes, there are ... .
5. Are there ... maps on the walls? -No, there aren't ... .
6. Are there ... pens on the desk? -Yes, there are....
8. Are there ... sweets in your bag? - Yes, there are ... .
9. Have you got ... English books at home? - Yes, I have ... .
10. There are ... beautiful pictures in the magazine. Look at them.
11. There is ... ink in my pen, I cannot write.

### VII. Put in *some* or *any*.

- 1.I bought... cheese but I didn't buy ... bread.
- 2.I'm going to the post office. I need ... stamps.
- 3.There aren't ... shops in this part of town.
- 4.George and Alice haven't got ... children.
- 5.Have you got ... brothers or sisters?
- 6.There are ... beautiful flowers in the garden.
- 7.Do you know ... good hotels in London?
8. 'Would you like ... tea?' "Yes, please."
- 9.When we were on holiday, we visited ... very interesting places.
- 10.Don't buy ... rice. We don't need....

### VIII. Complete the sentences. Use *some* or *any*+one of these words.

(*Air, cheese, batteries, friends, help, language, letters, milk, photographs, shampoo*).

1. I want to wash my hair. Is there ...?
- 2.This evening I'm going to write ...
3. I haven't got my camera, so I can't take ... .
4. Do you speak ... foreign ...?
- 5.Yesterday evening I went to restaurant with ... of mine.
6. Can I have ... in my coffee, please?
- 7.The radio isn't working. There aren't ...in it.
8. It's hot in this office. I'm going out of ... fresh ....



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

- .....
9. "Would you like ...?" "No, thank you I've had enough to eat."  
10. I can do this job alone. I don't need ... .

### **IX. Put much or many:**

1. Did you buy ... food?
2. There aren't ... hotels in this town.
3. We haven't got ... petrol.
4. Were there ... people on the train?
5. Did ... students fail the examination?
6. Paula hasn't got hungry. I didn't eat ... .
7. I haven't seen George for ... years.
8. Please don't put ... pepper on the meat.
9. There were ... plates on the table.
10. I never eat ... bread with soup.
11. Why did you eat so ... ice-cream?
12. I have ... time, so I can't go with you.
13. He has ... English books.
14. There is ... ink in my pen. Have you got any ink?
15. There are ... bears in the zoo.

### **X. Put questions to all parts of the sentence.**

1. My sister gets up very early.
2. TV programmes begin at ten o'clock.
3. Our family does not go to the country in summer.
4. At home Tommy wears his new slippers.
5. His parents work at a factory.
6. Late at night Tom walks his dog in the park.
7. There is a cup of hot tea on the kitchen table.
8. My sister has two little children.

## Lesson16

### Speaking

**Speak about yourself and your students life. You need some of the following words and word combinations:**

- to enter an Institute
- to take a subject
- to come to smb. = to be good at smth.
- research work
- to be strong in
- to be weak in
- lecture on
- to make progress
- to work by fits and starts
- to fail in a subject
- to fail at an exam
- to fall behind the group
- to catch up with the group
- to read up for an exam
- to take an exam in
- to pass an exam in
- to hand in
- to learn the poem by heart
- to speak in a loud voice
- to do exercise 10 in written form

Make up your own dialogues .

### Reading

#### How do I Learn English

Nowadays it's very necessary to know a foreign language. Knowledge of foreign language helps us to develop friendship and understanding among people.

The total number of languages in the world is from 2500 to 5000. English is spoken all over the world and very popular. There is a proverb: «Knowledge is Power» I agree with it.

I study English, because I want to read English books of great writers in the original. I want to communicate with people from different countries, I want to understand their culture and traditions. I like to travel. How do I learn English? First of all I read a lot. There is always an English book on my desk. I'm trying to learn few new words every day. To remember words better I put them into groups. For example: believe - believer - belief - disbelieve. I listen to songs in English and try to recognize the

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
words. I have some tapes and video-tapes in English. I like to watch different satellite TV programs in English. I like studying English.

### Vocabulary:

1. necessary - қажетті
2. foreign - шетел
3. knowledge - білім
4. to communicate - қарым-қатынас жасау

### Answer the questions:

1. Why is it necessary to speak English?
2. Is it difficult for you to learn English?
3. Is English popular now?
4. How do you learn English?
5. Do you like studying English?

### Writing

### TEST

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Choose the right variant .<br>I have ... money.<br>a) any<br>b) some<br>c) an<br>d) the | 4. Mary doesn't have ...<br>money.<br>a) any<br>b) the<br>c) an<br>d) some    |
| 2. Would you like ... coffee?<br>a) any<br>b) some<br>c) an<br>d) the                      | 5. Could I have ... cake,<br>please?.<br>a) any<br>b) some<br>c) an<br>d) the |
| 3. Do you have ... children?<br>a) any<br>b) some<br>c) an<br>d) the                       |   |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

6. I don't have ... CDs.

- a) any
- b) an
- c) some
- d) the

7. Sorry, we don't have ...  
rooms available.

- a) any
- b) some
- c) an
- d) the

8. Paul took ... books with  
him on holiday.

- a) any
- b) the
- c) an
- d) some

9. Do you speak ... foreign  
languages?

- a) any
- b) some
- c) an
- d) the

10. Can you lend me ...  
money, please?

- a) any
- b) an
- c) some
- d) the

11. Have you got ... brothers  
or sisters?

- a) any
- b) some
- c) an
- d) the

12. I'm thirsty. Can I have ...  
water, please?

- a) the
- b) some
- c) an
- d) any

13. There are ... really  
beautiful buildings in  
Vienna.

- a) any
- b) the
- c) an
- d) some

14. Do you know ... good  
hotels in London?

- a) any
- b) some
- c) the
- d) an

15. Would you like ... tea?.

- a) the
- b) some
- c) an
- d) any

## Lesson 17

### Speaking

**Compose your own dialogues on the topic "My first travelling". Use the following words and word combinations in sentences of your own:**

- travelling
- to travel (go) by train (boat, plane, car, bus)
- to take the train to
- fast (slow) train
- to buy (book) tickets
- to make a trip (by train)
- to go on a trip
- to travel for pleasure
- to go sightseeing
- to leave for
- to arrive at
- to stop at
- to change trains at
- to catch (miss) the train
- the railway station
- to go on a hike
- to take part in hikes
- to go for a drive
- to take a taxi
- to park a car

2. Construct 10 questions to the text.

### Reading

#### Travelling

I like to travel. First of all, the members of our family usually have long walks in the country. Such walks are called hikes. If we want to see countryside we have to spend a part of our summer holidays on hikes. During such hikes we see a lot of interesting places, sometimes we meet interesting people. It's useful for all members of our family. We take our rucksacks. We don't think about tickets and there is no need to hurry up. As for me, it's more comfortable to travel by train and by plane. But it's difficult to buy tickets for the plane. That's why we buy our tickets beforehand. When I travel by plane, I don't spend a lot of time going from one place to another, I like to fly. If I travel by train or by plane my friends see me off at the railway station or in the airport. I like to travel by car. It's interesting too, because you can see many things in a short time. When we go by car, we don't take tickets. We put all things we need in a car. We don't carry

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
them. Sometimes we go to the seaside for a few days. As usual the weather is warm and we can swim. It's a pleasure to watch white ships. So I can say that I enjoy all kinds of travelling very much.

### Vocabulary:

1. to hike - серуендеу
2. rucksack - рюкзак
3. beforehand - алдын-ала
4. to see smb. off - шығарып салу

### Answer the questions:

1. Do you like to travel?
2. How do you like to travel?
3. Do you prefer to travel by sea or by plane?
4. Whom do you like to travel with?
5. Why do we buy tickets beforehand?
6. You don't like to spend your summer holiday in town, do you?
7. Do you like to go to the country or do you prefer to go to sea-side for your summer holiday?
8. Do you like to swim? Can you swim well?
9. It's nice to lie in the sun after swimming, isn't it?
10. What are your plans for next summer?

## GRAMMAR

### ADJECTIVE

#### Сын есім

Ағылшын тілінде, қазақ тіліндегідей, сын есім - заттың, нәрсенің белгісін, қасиетін білдіретін сөз табы. Ол what? - қандай? What kind of? - сапасы қандай? деген сұрақтарға жауап береді:

- a new firm - жаңа фирма
- a wide street - кең көше
- a strong companion - берік серіктестік

#### Сын есімнің түрлері.

Сын есімдер құрлымына қарай негізгі және туынды болып бөлінеді:

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

а) негізгі (түбір) сын есімдер:

red - қызыл

white - ақ

blue - көк

big - үлкен

old - кәрі

ә) туынды сын есімдер түбірге қосымшалар (префикстер, жұрнақтар) жалғану арқылы жасалады:

unable - қабілетсіз

uncountable - саналмайтын, есептелмейтін

fixed - тұрақты

expensive - қымбат

economic - үнемшіл

б) күрделі сын есімдер екі немесе көп түбір сын есімдерден жасалады:

ice-cold - мұздай суық

snow-white - қардай аппак

dack-grey - қошқыл сұр

Қазақ тіліндегідей ағылшын тілінде де сын есім мағынасына қарай сапалық (Qualative) және қатыстық (Relative) болып екіге бөлінеді.

Заттың түр - түсін, сыр - сипатын, сапа белгісін білдіретін сын есімдер сапалық сын есімдер деп аталады:

big - үлкен

beautiful - әдемі

cold - суық

black - қара

Белгілі бір заттардың сын сипаты мен белгісін басқа бір заттың қатысы арқылы білдіретін сын есімдер қатыстық сын есімдер деп аталады:

a silver bangle - күміс білезік

a golden arrow - алтын садақ

the Siberian white bear - сібірлік ақ аю

Ағылшын тілінде сын есім жіктелмейді, септелмейді, жекеше, көпше түрге бөлінбейді, оның тек үш шырайы болады.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Сын есімнің шырайлары

<b>The Positive Degree</b> жай шырай	<b>The Comparative Degree</b> салыстырмалы шырай	<b>The Superlative Degree</b> күшейтпелі шырай
Brave sad rich бір буынды сын есімдер	braver sadder richer	(the) bravest (the) saddest (the) richest
simple clever easy (-le, -y, -er, -ow әріп тіркестеріне аяқталған екі буынды сын есімдер)	simpler cleverer easier	(the) simplest (the) cleverest (the) easiest
Difficult Polite	more difficult more polite	(the) most difficult (the) most polite
Bored Tired	more bored more tired	(the) most bored (the) most tired

Сапалық сын есімнің қазақ тіліндегідей үш шырай формасы болады:

a) жай шырай (the Positive Degree).

Жай шырай түбір күйінде басқа шырай формаларына негіз болады:

short - қысқа

fat - толық

happy - бақытты

b) салыстырмалы шырай (the Comparative Degree) заттың бір тектес сапасы мен белгісінің арасындағы сәл кем немесе сәл артығырақ екенін білдіреді:

shorter - қысқарақ

fatter - толығырақ

happier - бақыттырақ



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
с) күшейтпелі шырай ( the Superlative Degree) заттың алғашқы

қалыпты сапасын тым асыра, көтере немесе кеміте көрсету үшін қолданылады:

(the) shortest - ең қысқа

(the) fattest - өте толы

(the) happiest - ең бақытты

### Шырай түрлерінің жасалу жолдары

*Салыстырмалы шырайдың жасалуы.*

а) Егер жай шырай сын есім оқылмайтын -е дауыстысына аяқталса, сын есімнің түбіріне тек -г жалғанады:

fine - жақсы

**finer** - жақсырақ

white - ақ

**whiter** - ағырақ

б) егер жай шырайдағы сын есім -у әрпіне аяқталып, оған -er жұрнағы жалғанса, у- і әрпіне өзгереді:

lazy - жалқау

**lazier** - жалқауырақ

dirty - кір

**dirtier** - кірлеу

pretty - әдемі

**prettier** - әдемірек

с) жай шырайлы күрделі сын есімнің алдына 'more' - көбірек, артығырақ сөзі келуі арқылы да жасалады:

convenient - қолайлы

more convenient -

қолайлырақ

effective - нәтижелі

more effective -

нәтижелірек

д) у әрпіне және -er, -ow, -le әріп тіркестеріне аяқталған бір буынды және екі буынды сын есімдер жай шырай түріндегі сын есімдерге -er [ə] жұрнағының жалғануы арқылы жасалады:

slow - баяу

**slower** - баяуырақ

clever - ақылды

**cleverer** - ақылдырақ

е) ағылшын тілінде less және smaller сөздері қазақ тіліне азырақ, кішірек болып аударылады:

less - кішірек сөзі; little - аз сөзінің салыстырмалы шырай түрі, ал smaller - кішірек, small - кішкентай сөзінің салыстырмалы шырай түрі.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
He has less time than Sagynysh. - Оның Сағынышқа қарағанда уақыты азырақ.

His house is smaller than yours. - Оның үйі сіздікіне қарағанда кішірек.

f) ағылшын тілінде more - көбірек сөзі much, many - көп сөздерінің салыстырмалы шырай түрі:

He has more important ideas than you. - Сізге қарағанда оның пікірі маңыздырақ.

Екі нәрсені, затты салыстырғанда than - қарағанда шылауы қолданылады.

The Balkash Lake is smaller than the Caspian Sea. - Балқаш көлі Каспий теңізіне қарағанда кішірек.

Ағылшын тіліндегі -er, -r жұрнақтары қазақ тіліндегі -ырақ, -ірек, -рақ, -рек, -лау, -леу, -тау, -теу жұрнақтарына сәйкес келеді.

*Күшейтпелі шырайдың жасалуы.*

a) күшейтпелі шырай жай шырайдың алдына – most сөзінің қойылуы және -st, -est жұрнақтарының жалғануы арқылы жасалады және олардың алдына the - белгілілік артиклі қойылады:

beautiful - сымбатты            the most beautiful - өте (ең) сымбатты

tall - биік                            the tallest - ең биік

late - кеш                            the latest - өте кеш

b) егер жай шырайдағы сын есім -у әріпіне аяқталып, оған -est жұрнағы жалғанса, ол -і әріпіне өзгереді:

happy - бақытты                    the happiest - ең бақытты

dirty - кір                            the dirtiest - өте кір

Ағылшын тіліндегі күшейтпелі шырай тудыратын most сөзі және -st, -est жұрнақтары қазақ тіліндегі өте, аса, тым сөздеріне мағыналас келеді. Кейбір сын есімдердің салыстырмалы және күшейтпелі шырайлары басқа түбір сөздер арқылы жасалады:

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Ерекше жасалуы

The Positive Degree жай шырай	The Comparative Degree салыстырмалы шырай	The Superlative Degree күшейтпелі шырай
bad, ill	worse	the worst
far	farther /further	the farthest / furthest
good/well	better	the best
little	less	the least
much/many	more	the most

Writing

Exercises

**I. Give the comparative and the superlative degrees of the following adjectives.**

difficult, important, wonderful, short, big, easy, clean, high, clever, hot, long, good, bad, little, many, much, small, narrow, interesting, rich, fine, large, poor.

**II. Use the words in brackets to write sentences. Use the + superlative.**

(It's \ cold \ place) *It's the coldest place.*

- 1.(It's \ big \ shop)
- 2.(It's \ difficult \ exam)
- 3.(It's \ good \ film)
- 4.(He's \ rich \ man)
- 5.( It's \ modern \ flat)
- 6.(It's \ bad \ hotel).

**III. Opposites. Complete the following sentences using an opposite adjective in its comparative or superlative form.**

Example:

*Robert's the oldest in the family.*

*No, he isn't. He is the youngest.*

1. I'm the tallest in this class!
- 2.My homework was worse than yours.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- 3.The weather today is colder than yesterday.
- 4.This is the easiest exercise in this book.
5. Darja arrived later than Altair.
- 6.She bought the cheapest watch in the shop.

### **IV. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions.**

Example: Sister \ me \ my\ than\ younger \ is.

My sister is younger than me.

1. family\the\is\the\in\father\oldest\my.
2. book\interesting\than\my\your\more\is\book.
3. class\who\the\oldest\the\in\is.
4. weather\better\the\today\than\yesterday\is.
5. passenger\plane\is\which\world\fastest\the\in\the.

### **V. Insert the appropriate form of the adjective.**

1. When is the weather (warm) in England? 2. In June the temperature is usually (high) than in May. 3. In July the temperature is (high). 4. In summer the nights are (short) than in winter. 5. In December the nights are (long). 6. In the middle of summer the sun is (hot). 7. Landscapes of Wales are (beautiful) than in Scotland.

### **VI. Translate into Kazakh.**

1.What is your height? You are taller than me. 2. She felt as strong as her brother. 3. We started earlier than you. 4. He was more careful than I. 5. This student is the most attentive in our group. 6. I need a warmer coat. 7. He is as tired as you. 8. He was one of the most experienced workers at the factory. 9.Better late than never. 10. She was not so attractive as her mother. 11. His work is not as difficult as mine. 12. He was the elder in the family. 13. It is easier to swim in the sea than in the river. 14. This is the smallest room in our flat.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### **VII. Give negative and interrogative forms and translate the sentences.**

1. Modern London is (big) than London of the past centuries. 2. London is one of the (large) seaports in Europe. 3. You can find (fine) theatres, cinemas and (good) concert halls and shops in the West End. 4. In a few years Astana will be one of the (beautiful) cities in the world. 5. What is (big) city in the world? 6. The Nile is (long) river in Africa. 7. Which is (poor) part of London? 8. Arsen is the (good) football player in our group.

### **VIII. Translate.**

1. Ең жақсы жоспар, ең үлкен кеңсе, жақсырақ, жаманырақ, ең жас, биігірек, өте таза, өте қызық, ең қысқа, ең ұзын, жасырақ, үлкенірек. 2. Бұл ең ұзақ және өте қиын сөйлем. 3. Ең кішкентай және ең әдемі сурет. 4. Мен досыма қарағанда ағылшын тілін нашар білемін. 5. Менің бөлмем сіздің бөлмеңізге қарағанда үлкенірек. 6. Жылдағы ең қысқа қай ай? 7. Сіздің отбасыңыздағы ең жасы кім? 8. Сіздің топта ағылшын тілінде ең жақсы сөйлейтін кім? 9. Оның сіңілісі менің сіңілімнен жасырақ..

### **IX. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the largest city in Kazakhstan? 2. Who is the best student in your group? 3. What is the best season of the year? 4. Is it more difficult for you to read in English than in Russian? 4. What is the shortest way to your university? 5. Are the streets of our capital more beautiful now than they were some years ago?

### **X. Put the following sentences in plural.**

1. This room is very large. 2. There is a match in the box. 3. Has this lady a knife? 4. There is a man and a woman in the street. 5. This lady is that gentleman's wife. 6. This shoe is too large for my foot. 7. The child is sitting on a bench. 8. My tooth is white. 9. This key is made of steel. 10. A potato is a vegetable and a cherry is a fruit. 11. This is my friend's study.

## Lesson 18

### Speaking

1. Prepare and tell the story about your favourite sport. What are the popular sports in your country? Winter and winter sports.
2. Construct some sentences with the following words and word combinations:

- to go in for sports (athletics)
- to run
- to jump
- to swim
- to ski
- to skate
- long (high) jump
- to go skating (skiing)
- to practice
- to keep fit
- trainer
- instructor
- sportsman
- sports ground
- outdoor (indoor) sports
- to set up (hold, break) a record
- to play games (football, volleyball, basketball ,tennis,), to play in a match
- to win
- spectators
- to cheer

### Reading

#### My Favourite Sport

We all need exercise. This is true for young people (in their teens) as well as for adults. Even if you don't plan make sports your main occupation. This is my opinion and I feel like it is true. As long as I can remember myself I was always keen on tennis. I love this sport with its old noble traditions, though myself never dreamed of becoming anything more than an amateur. I watch closely all tennis competitions and championships. There are a lot of them, but my favourite championship is Wimbledon because old tennis traditions remains there as they are. Some of the most well-known Wimbledon champions are: John McEnroe, Boris Becker, Steffi Graf, Monica Seles. My dream is to get a chance to watch at least one of them playing. And meantime I play tennis

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
with my friends. It is also a great opportunity to socialize with people who have similar interest (as any sport I suppose).

### Vocabulary:

1. amateur- әуесқой спортшы
2. to compete in a championship - чемпионатқа қатысу
3. to lose the competition – жеңілу
4. to set records – рекорд жасау
5. to train – жаттығу
6. to win the competition – жеңу

### Answer the questions:

1. What does sport help people to do?
2. What is your favourite sport?
3. What sports are popular in Kazakhstan?
4. Where can amateurs go in for sports?
5. What is Wimbledon famous for?

### Writing

### TEST

1. Choose the right variant.  
That was the ... time of my life.  
a) most happy  
b) happiest  
c) happy  
d) happier
2. He speaks ... than the other teachers.  
a) fastest  
b) faster  
c) fast  
d) the fast
3. Michael drives ... than me.  
a) slower  
b) slowest  
c) the slow  
d) slow
4. You have to be ... .  
a) more careful  
b) carefuler  
c) carefuller  
d) the carefuler

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. I'll talk to you ... .

- a) more late
- b) latter
- c) the later
- d) later

6. That guy is ... than my  
other neighbors.

- a) meaner
- b) the most mean
- c) most mean
- d) mean

7. This coffee is ... than the  
one I had this morning.

- a) more weak
- b) weaker
- c) weak
- d) the weakest

8. He is feeling ... .

- a) worse
- b) more bad
- c) bad
- d) badder

9. Is your brother ... than  
you?

- a) more young
- b) younger
- c) young
- d) the youngest

10. Larry is a good dancer,  
but Martin is ... .

- a) more better
- b) better
- c) good
- d) gooder

11. Do you have anything ...  
?

- a) more cheap
- b) cheaper
- c) cheap
- d) the cheapest

12. Can you meet me ... ?

- a) more early
- b) earlier
- c) early
- d) earlier

13. Our dog is ... than your  
dog.

- a) more nice
- b) nice
- c) nicer
- d) nicest

14. This situation is ... than  
the last one.

- a) more serious
- b) seriouser
- c) serious
- d) the serious



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

15. He is ... than his brother.

- a) more lazy
- b) lazier
- c) lazy
- d) lazyer

## Lesson 19

### Speaking

**Make up your own dialogues on the topic "Theatre". Use the following words and word combinations in sentences of your own:**

- to go to the theatre (cinema, concert, circus)
- actor
- actress
- to play the part of
- talented
- famous
- popular singer
- pop-music
- pop-group,
- to play the piano, the guitar
- classical music, jazz; opera, tragedy
- theatre-goer
- spectator
- bill
- box-office
- to buy
- a ticket
- stage
- orchestra
- stall

**Be ready to talk on one of the following topics:**

- a) My first visit to the theatre.
- b) My favourite actor (actress).
- c) The popular play of the season.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### Reading

#### At the Theatre

There are not many theatres in my town, but they are all very popular with the public. I am a theatre lover, too. As for me, I prefer drama to all other theatres, but I also like opera and musical comedy. I'll never forget my first visit to the Opera and Ballet Theatre. My friend and I wanted to see the famous ballet "Swan Lake" by Tchaikovsky. We bought the tickets in advance and came to the theatre half an hour before the show. At 7 sharp the performance began. From the very first minute I was deeply impressed by everything I saw on the stage. The costumes were fine. The dancing and music were thrilling. The ballet seemed to me a fairy-tale. I had never seen anything more wonderful. My friend also enjoyed every minute of it. When the curtain fell at the end of the performance, there came a storm of applause. It seemed that it would never end. The dancers received call after call. They were presented with large bouquets of flowers. We also applauded enthusiastically. The performance was a great success.

#### Vocabulary:

1. backstage - сахна сырты
2. ballet dancer - балерина
3. box-office - билет кассасы
4. cloakroom - гардероб
5. rehearsal - дайындық
6. scenery - сахна көркі
7. stage - сахна

#### Answer the questions:

1. Do people usually watch films at the theatre or on video?
2. Are theatres expensive?
3. How often do you go to the theatre or watch a video?

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

## GRAMMAR

### THE NUMERAL

#### Сан есім

Заттың немесе заттық ұғымдар мен құбылыстардың санын, ретін, мөлшерін білдіретін сөз табы сан есім деп аталады. Сан есім: How many? How much? қанша? неше? Which - нешінші, қаншасыншы? деген сұрақтарға жауап береді.

Мысалы: one (бір) two (екі) т.б.

Сан есімдер есептік (*Cardinal numerals*) және реттік сан есімдер (*Ordinal numerals*) болып бөлінеді.

Реттік сан есім заттың қатарын, ретін білдіріп *which* (нешінші, қайсы) деген сұрақтарға жауап береді, мысалы: *first* (бірінші), *second* (екінші) т.б.

Сөйлемде есептік және реттік сан есімдер әдетте зат есімнің алдында қолданылып, анықтауыш рөлін атқарады: Give me three English books.

<b>Numbers and fractions</b> Сандар мен бөлшектер					
1	One	1 <sup>st</sup>	first		
2	Two	2 <sup>nd</sup>	second	1/2	a half
3	Three	3 <sup>rd</sup>	third	1/3	a third
4	Four	4 <sup>th</sup>	fourth	1/4	a fourth
5	Five	5 <sup>th</sup>	fifth	1/5	a fifth
6	Six	6 <sup>th</sup>	sixth	1/6	a sixth
7	Seven	7 <sup>th</sup>	seventh	1/7	a seventh
8	Eight	8 <sup>th</sup>	eighth	1/8	an eighth
9	Nine	9 <sup>th</sup>	ninth	1/9	a ninth
10	Ten	10 <sup>th</sup>	tenth	1/10	a tenth
11	eleven	11 <sup>th</sup>	eleventh	1/11	an eleventh
12	twelve	12 <sup>th</sup>	twelfth	1/12	a twelfth

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

13	thirteen	13 <sup>th</sup>	thirteenth	1/13	a thirteenth
14	fourteen	14 <sup>th</sup>	fourteenth	1/14	a fourteenth
15	fifteen	15 <sup>th</sup>	fifteenth	1/15	a fifteenth
16	sixteen	16 <sup>th</sup>	sixteenth	1/16	a sixteenth
17	seventeen	17 <sup>th</sup>	seventeenth	1/17	a seventeenth
18	eighteen	18 <sup>th</sup>	eighteenth	1/18	an eighteenth
19	nineteen	19 <sup>th</sup>	nineteenth	1/19	a nineteenth
20	Twenty	20 <sup>th</sup>	twentieth	1/20	a twentieth
21	twenty-one	21 <sup>st</sup>	twenty-first	1/21	a twenty-first
30	Thirty	30 <sup>th</sup>	thirtieth	1/30	a thirtieth
31	thirty-one	31 <sup>st</sup>	thirty-first	1/31	a thirty-first

101            a hundred and one  
 203            two hundred and three  
 432            four hundred and thirty-two  
 1736          a/one thousand seven hundred and thirty-six  
 60 000        sixty thousand  
 500 000      five hundred thousand  
 1 000 000    a million  
 couple = 2    dozen = 12    score = 20  
 (a couple of days = a few days)

several hundred men	hundreds of people
a thousand pages	many thousands of books
half a million	millions and millions of stars

300 = three hundred  
 1 / 4 = a quarter = a fourth  
 3 / 4 = three quarters = three fourths  
 2 / 3 = two thirds  
 3 / 17 = three seventeenths  
 1 1/2 = one and a half

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

$2\frac{3}{8}$  = two and three eighths

9 / 10 = nine tenths

7 / 18 = seven eighteenths

Егер бөлшектік сан есімнің алымындағы сан 1-ден көп болатын болса, онда бөліміндегі санға -s жалғауы жалғанады.

a quarter of the cake, two thirds of the cake

even numbers (2,4,6,8,10) жұп сандар

odd numbers (3, 5, 7, 9) тақ сандар

addition (қосу амалы)

subtraction (азайту амалы)

multiplication (көбейту амалы)

division (бөлу амалы)

1-ден 13-ке дейінгі есептік сан есімдер:

1 – one

5 – five

9 – nine

2 – two

6 – six

10 – ten

3 – three

7 – seven

11 – eleven

4 – four

8 – eight

12 – twelve

13-тен 20-ға дейінгі есептік сан есімдер сол сандардың бірінші ондығына -teen жұрнағын жалғау арқылы жасалады (бұл жағдайда three және five сан есімдері өзгереді):

13 – thirteen

17 – seventeen

14 – fourteen

18 – eighteen

15 – fifteen

19 – nineteen

16 – sixteen

-teen жұрнағымен аяқталатын сан есімдердің бірінші буынына да, екінші буынына да екпін түседі:

`thir`teen, `four`teen.

Егер бұл сан есімдер зат есімдердің анықтаушышы болып келсе, онда екпін бірінші буында ғана сақталады:

`fifteen` books, `sixteen` chairs.

Реттік сан есімдер алдынан белгілілік артикль қойылу арқылы және алғашқы үш реттік саннан (first, second, third) басқа сандарға -th жұрнағын жалғау арқылы жасалады:

Ондық сандар. Сан есімдердің алғашқы ондыққа кіретін сандарына -ty жұрнағын қосу арқылы жасалады:

six – sixty, seven – seventy.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Бұл жағдайда two, three, four және five сан есімдері түбегейлі өзгереді:

two – twenty, three – thirty, four – forty, five – fifty.

Ондық сан есімдерде екпін бірінші буынға түседі:

`forty, `fifty, `sixty.

Ондық сан мен оған қосымша санның арасына дефис қойылады:

21 – twenty-one; 35 – thirty-five; 47 – forty-seven.

20 – twenty

21 – twenty-one

22 – twenty-two etc.

30 – thirty

40 – forty

50 – fifty

60 – sixty

70 – seventy

80 – eighty

90 – ninety

Ағылшын тілінде құрамды реттік сан есімдер қазақ тіліндегідей екі бөліктен тұрады: бірінші бөлігі есептік сан есім болса, екінші бөлігі реттік сан есім болады, мысалы: twenty-first (жиырма бірінші).

hundred (жүз), thousand (мың) сан есімдерінің алдына топтық мағына беретін a артиклі немесе сан есімі пайдаланылады:

a (one) hundred, a (one) thousand. Hundred, thousand сан есімдерінің алдында басқа сан есімдер тұрса, онда оларға -s жалғаулығы жалғанбайды: two hundred, three thousand, four million.

Алайда hundred, thousand сан есімдері жүздің, мыңның белгісіз санын көрсетсе -s жалғауы жалғануы мүмкін. Бұл жағдайда олар зат есім болып саналады да, онан кейін келетін зат есім of қосымшасы арқылы қолданылады:

Hundreds of students (жүздеген студенттер).

Thousands of people (мыңдаған адамдар).

Құрамды сан есімдердегі ондық сандардың алдында and жалғаулығы қолданылады:

375 – three hundred and seventy-five.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

305 – three hundred and five.

100 – a hundred

101 – a (one) hundred and one

102 – a (one) hundred and two

200 – two hundred

300 – three hundred

400 – four hundred

1000 – a (one) thousand

Құрамды реттік сан есімдердің алдыңғы бөлігі есептік сан есім түрінде берілсе, соңғы бөлігі реттік сан есім түрінде беріледі:

Hundred and twenty first (жүз жиырма бірінші).

One thousand three hundred and forty-eight (бір мың үш жүз қырық сегізінші).

Хронологиялық даталардың және уақыт белгілерінің оқылуы:

1. Жылдар есептік сан есімдермен белгіленіп, екі – екіден оқылады, немесе екіге бөлініп оқылады:

1994 – nineteen and ninety four

1888 – eighteen and eighty eight

2000 – twenty and hundred; [ou]

2006 – twenty and [ou]; six

2. Ай аттары мен күндерді белгілеуде реттік сан есімдер беріледі де, олардың оқылуы әр түрлі болады:

October 2, 1994, екі түрлі оқуға болады:

a) The second of October, 1994 - Екінші қазан, 1994 жыл

ә) October the second, 1994 - Қазанның екісі, 1994 жыл

3. Апта, ай аттары бас әріппен жазылады:

Sunday - жексенбі

Monday - дүйсенбі

Tuesday - сейсенбі

Wednesday - сәрсенбі

January - қаңтар

February - ақпан

March - наурыз

4. Уақытты белгілегенде егер сағаттың үлкен тілі он екінші он жағында тұрса *past* (кетті), ал сол жағында тұрса *to* (қалды) предлогтары қолданылады:

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- 2.10 – Ten minutes past two - екіден он минут кетті.  
2.50 – Ten minutes to three - үшке он минут қалды.  
2.45 – A quarter to three - он бес минутсыз үш.  
2.15 – A quarter past two - екіден он бес минут кетті.  
2.30 – Half past two - екі жарым.
5. Дәл уақытты көрсету үшін ат предлогты қолданылады:  
At what time? - Қай уақытта?  
At six o'clock - Сағат алтыда.  
At half past six - Алты жарымда.
6. Түнгі сағат 12 мен күндізгі сағат 12-ні айыру үшін ағылшын тілінде қысқартылған:  
Ante meridiem (a.m.) сөзі түске дейін деген мағынаны білдіреді.  
Post meridiem (p.m.) сөзі түстен кейін деген мағына береді.  
Олар латын тілінен шыққан.

### Writing

#### Exercises

#### I. Write in words: cardinal numerals & ordinal numerals.

212; 455; 603; 879; 931; 742; 1325; 357; 4256. 5, 13, 20, 33, 46, 51, 66, 79, 82, 94, 100, 1, 2, 3, 5, 15, 21, 32, 43, 55, 64, 76, 87, 98, 100.

#### Read and write the following dates.

5/1 – 1905, 23/II – 1917, 13/VII – 1945, 16/XII – 1986, 1/I – 2007, 28/I – 2004, 17/VI – 2006, 7/IX – 2006.

#### II. Put down to be and to have.

1. She ... no brother.
2. Pete ... a small family.
3. We ... many friends.
4. We ... a good library.
5. Our books ... in my big bookcase.
6. ... your sister married?
7. She ... many Russian books, but she ... no English books.
8. There ... a nice coffee-table near the window.
9. We ... a large colour TV -set in our room.



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**III. Put in the where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is already correct.**

1. What is name of this street? *the name*
2. What's on television tonight? *OK*
3. Our apartment is on second floor. ....
4. What time is lunch? .....
5. I'm going out after dinner. ....
6. What's biggest city in world? .....
7. We're going away at end of May. ....
8. Would you like to go to moon? .....
9. My sister got married last month. ....
10. Which is best hotel in this town? .....

**IV. Fill in the blanks with the following prepositions or adverbs wherever necessary and translate these sentences into Kazakh.**

*Of, at, in, to, on, of, under, since, for, from*

1. It is dark here. Please, switch ... the light.
2. I have lived here ... 1998.
3. They sat down ... the table and began to eat.
4. She left ... our town yesterday.
5. Are you afraid ... wild animals?
6. I have worked here ... many years .
7. It is not good to bathe ... the sea ... this time of the year.
8. He laughed ... me when I left the room. ... first we sat ... a big tree, and then we went swimming ... the river. ... protect us ... bad weather .
9. Do you play ... chess well? Many buildings have been built ... glass and other new materials.
10. We shall go ... the South ... next month.

**V. Write questions to which these sentences are the answers.**

1. There are three books on the table.
2. My book is blue.
3. No, this house is not grey.
4. It is near the park.
5. Yes, I have some.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

6. I have six lessons on Monday.
7. It is five o'clock.
8. We have dinner at 7 o'clock.

### **VI. Add tail-questions to the following sentences.**

Model: *You began to study English last year, didn't you?*

1. Your sister works at school, ... ?
2. My friend doesn't speak French, ... ?
3. Tomorrow will be Saturday, ... ?
4. You didn't listen to the news yesterday, ... ?
5. You will have some more tea, ... ?
6. My sister is going to Almaty next week, ... ?
7. It is cold today, ... ?
8. You cannot swim, ... ?
9. We must do this work in time, ... ?
10. This is not your camera, ... ?
11. You will open the window, ... ?
12. She has got a headache, ... ?
13. You have taken the boy's temperature, ... ?

### **VII. Compose your own dialogues on these pattern.**

Arman: How much rice do you buy each week?

Dana: I usually buy two kilos of rice.

Arman: And how many tomatoes do you eat?

Dana: About six.

Arman: How many pineapples do you get?

Dana: Oh, only one.

### **VIII. Insert many, much, little, a little, few, a few.**

1. There is ... light in this room.
2. Are there ... new words in this text?
3. I know English ... and I can help you with the translation of this text.
4. Is there ... ink in your fountain-pen?
5. There are ... new houses in our street.
6. Going to Shymkent by air costs ... money.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

- .....
7. Westminster Abbey is a very old building. ... famous men were buried (жерленген) there.
  8. Arman has ... time for reading now.
  9. Would you like ... more apples?
  10. I saw Erlan ... days ago.
  11. Do you spent ... money on books?
  12. Four hundred years ago very ... people had books.

### IX. Fill in the blanks with articles wherever necessary.

...old lady was going to take ...taxi. "Driver," she said, "I want you to take me to ... station." "Yes, madam," said ... driver. "And you must drive slowly and carefully. Don't do until ... policeman lowers his arm and please don't rush round ... corners." ... taxi-driver was getting angry. All right, ... madam," he said, "but if we have ... accident to what hospital shall I take you?"

### X. Translate into Kazakh.

1. What time is it? It's half past six.
2. What time is it? It's quarter to five.
3. What time is it? It's three o'clock.
4. What time is it? It's quarter past eight.

## Lesson 20

### Speaking

#### Make up your own dialogues on the topic.

- a) One of the best films you've seen.
- b) Your favourite film actor (actress). You need some of the following words and word combinations:
  - hall
  - box
  - gallery
  - interval
  - audience
  - to applause
  - to see the film (the pictures)
  - to listen to the orchestra
  - to go to the disco
  - to dance
  - rock-n-roll

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

- to take part in the concert
- to enjoy
- to listen to the radio
- to speak on the radio
- to hear it on (over) the radio
- to watch TV, television
- to see the match on TV
- the first (educational) program
- film star

Describe your favourite film star.  
Use the text above as a model.

### Reading

#### Cinema

I like to go to the cinema. When I have free time, I always go to see a new film. When I want to go to the cinema I usually look in the programme what films are on. Then I phone my friend and we discuss what films to see. We prefer feature films, but also enjoy cartoons and popular science films. To see a good love story, musical or detective film is a very pleasant way of spending free time. There are many talented actors and actresses in this country. My favourite actor is Assanali Ashimov. My favourite actress is Meruert Utekeshova . They played the leading parts in many films and I have always enjoyed their superb acting. The news on TV helps to know what happens in the world each day. It also helps to attract the attention of people to different important problems, such as hunger, earthquakes, water pollution and so on. The cinema is also the means of entertainment. After a working day one can relax watching some good movie. Nowadays people can't just imagine their life without the art of cinema.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. Do you often go to the cinema ?
2. Do you prefer cinema to theatre?
3. Are tickets to the cinema cheaper than to the theatre?
4. What does a cinema programme consist of?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. Who is your favourite actor (actress)?

**Writing**

**TEST**

1. Choose the right variant.

There were (300) visitors in this museum yesterday.

- a) forty
- b) three hundred
- c) ten
- d) twenty

2. There are 584 students at the department:

- a) five hundred and eighty-four.
- b) five hundred eighty-four.
- c) five eighty-four hundred.
- d) five and hundred eighty-four.

3. The year "1917".

- a) one thousand and seventeen.
- b) one thousand nine hundred seventeen.
- c) one thousand nine hundred and seventeen.
- d) nineteen seventeen.

4. The house was constructed in the ... century.

- a) ninety.
- b) nineteenth.
- c) nineteen.
- d) nineties.

5. There are (11) colleges in our town.

- a) fourteen
- b) three
- c) five
- d) eleven

6. Text 56 on page 287 is very difficult

- a) the fifty sixth, two hundred and eight seven
- b) the fifty sixth, two hundred and and eighty seven
- c) fifty sixth, two hundred eighty seventh
- d) fifty six, two hundred and eighty seven

7. Choose the cardinal numeral.

- a) the second
- b) thirteen
- c) the sixth
- d) the first

8. Choose the ordinal numeral.

- a) one
- b) seven
- c) four
- d) the fourteenth

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. Give the right answer:  
twenty + twenty-five = ?
- a) forty-five
  - b) fifty-five
  - c) twenty-five
  - d) thirty-five
10. Finish the following  
proverb: One for all and all  
for ...
- a) five
  - b) one
  - c) three
  - d) four
11. What time is it now? -  
3:15
- a) half past five
  - b) a quarter to four
  - c) half past three
  - d) a quarter past three
12. What time is it now? -  
10:35
- a) twenty -five minutes to  
eleven
  - b) a quarter past ten
  - c) thirty minutes past ten
  - d) twenty-three minutes past  
ten
13. Choose the right  
equivalent of: 3 friends
- a) third friends
  - b) thirty friends
  - c) the third friends
  - d) three friends
14. Choose the right variant  
of: 1917
- a) ninety and seven
  - b) nineteen seventy-one
  - c) nineteen hundred and  
seven
  - d) nineteen seventeen
15. Choose the right variant  
of: 30
- a) thirty thousand
  - b) thirty
  - c) three hundred
  - d) thirteen

## Lesson 21

### Speaking

#### 1. Be ready to talk on one of the following topics.

- a) Everyday shopping.
- b) How you bought presents for your family.

#### 2. Make up a dialogue on the topic “Shopping”.

You need some of the following words and word combinations:

- shopping
- the baker's
- the grocer's
- the greengrocer's
- the food department
- shop-assistant
- owner
- customer
- to go shopping
- to do one's shopping
- to buy
- to sell
- to pay
- cheap
- expensive
- change
- to try on
- too big (small, wide, tight)
- to suit
- to match one's dress

### Reading

#### My Usual Shopping Round

We go shopping every day. The other day my mother took me on a usual shopping round. We went to the grocer's and greengrocer's as we had run out of sugar and onions. At the greengrocer's there was a long queue. But we had nothing to do but stand in the queue if we wanted to get to the counter and have some onions. The shop-girl weighed us half a kilo of onions, we thanked her and went out.

Then we made our way to the grocer's where we bought a kilo of sugar and some sausage. We were about to go home as my mother suddenly remembered we had hardly any bread in the house. We dropped in at the baker's and bought a loaf of brown bread, some rolls and buns. On our way home the mother decided to call at a commercial shop. She was looking for a present to my father — as it was his birthday soon. As soon as we entered the shop, we found ourselves in a fantastic motley city of silk skirts

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
and shirts, woollen pullovers, frocks and leather boots and shoes. The smiling girl met us at the counter. My mother said she wanted to buy a size 50 shirt of a dark-blue colour. The girl suggested looking at a dark-blue cotton shirt with short sleeves. The shirt was the latest fashion and we were sure the father would like it. We paid the money at the cash-desk. The cashier gave us a receipt and with it we came up to the shop-assistant. She passed us a wrapped parcel with the shirt, thanked us and added they were always glad to see us at their shop and we happy and a bit excited went out of the shop.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. to go shopping, to do shopping - сауда жасау
2. grocer's - бакалея
3. greengrocer's - жеміс-жидек дүкені
4. queue - кезекте тұру
5. to weigh - өлшеу
6. to look for smth - іздеу

### **Answer the questions:**

1. Do you go shopping every day?
2. Where did you go?
3. What did you buy at the greengrocer's?
4. Was the queue long there?
5. Where did you buy a kilo of sugar and some sausage?
6. What did your mother decide to do?
7. What did you see at the commercial shop?
8. What did you buy there?
9. What did the cashier give you?
10. Why were you happy and a bit excited as you went out of the shop?



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**GRAMMAR**

**PREPOSITION OF TIMES AND DATES**

Уақытты білдіретін предлогтар

<b>At</b>	At 5 o'clock: at 7.30 on Sunday morning. Сенбі күні сағат 7.30 бен 5-тің арасы. At the moment: at the lunch time. Түскі мезгілдегі тамақ кезінде. At the midday. Тал түсте. At Christmas. Рождествода. At the New Year. Жаңа жылда.
<b>By</b>	I'll finish this work by 7 o'clock. Мен жұмысты 7-ге дейін істеймін.
<b>until till</b>	Stay at home until six o'clock. Сағат алтыға дейін үйде бол.
<b>During</b>	Be quite during the lesson. Сабақ кезінде тыныштық сақта.
<b>Since</b>	I have lived here since 2007. Мен бұл жерде 2007 жылдан бастап тұрамын.
<b>For</b>	I lived here for ten years. Менің бұл жерде тұрғаныма он жыл болды.
<b>After</b>	After 10 o'clock Bob goes to bed. Сағат оннан кейін Боб ұйықтайды.
<b>Before</b>	He has got there before 6 o'clock. Ол сол жерге сағат алтыға дейін жетті.
<b>Between</b>	The accident has taken place between 10 p.m. and 7a.m. Қайғылы оқиға сағат он мен жетінің арасында болды.
<b>from ... to</b>	The normal working week is from Monday to Friday. Жұмыс күні дүйсенбіден жұмаға дейін.

**TIME and DATES**

the night (time) = during the night = at night in the day (time) =  
during the day

when – қашан?

ten (minutes) past – он минут өтті

quarter past – ширек сағат өтті

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

half past – жарты сағат өтті  
five (minutes) to – бес минут қалды  
twenty (minutes) to – жиырма минут қалды  
on Friday – жұмада  
on 5<sup>th</sup> May (on the fifth of May) – бесінші мамырда  
in 2007 – 2007 жылы  
in May – мамырда  
in the morning – таңертең  
**Есте сақтаңыз!**  
by 3'clock – сағат 3-те  
for 2 days – екі күнде  
in a day – бірер күнде  
after school – мектептен кейін  
since yesterday – кешелі бері

### Writing

### Exercises

#### I. Put in in/at/on.

1. Don't sit ... grass. It's wet.
2. What have you got ... your bag?
3. Look! There is a man ... the roof. What is he doing?
4. There are a lot of fish ... this river.
5. Our house's number is 45. The number is ... the door.
6. "Is the cinema near here?", "Yes, turn left ... the traffic lights."
7. I usually do my shopping ... the City centre.
8. My sister lives ..... Brussels.
9. There's a small park ... the top of hill.
10. I think I heard the doorbell.
11. There's somebody ... the door.

#### II. Put the preposition at or on.

1. I get up ... seven o'clock or ... a quarter past seven.
2. ... Sunday I get up ... nine o'clock or ... half past nine. But last Sunday I slept very long and got up only ... noon.
3. Our lessons are usually over ... twenty minutes to two.
4. They returned from the wood ... sunset.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

- .....
5. I began writing my composition ... seven o'clock and finished only ... midnight.
  6. My birthday is ... the ninth of July.

### **III. Write at / on / in.**

*Goodbye! See you on Friday.*

1. Where were you ----28 February?
2. I got up -----8 o'clock this morning.
3. I like getting up early ----the morning.
4. My sister got married ----May.
5. Diane and I first met----1979.
6. Did you go out -----Tuesday? 7. Did you go out ----  
Tuesday evening?
7. Do you often go out ---the evening?
8. Let's meet ----7.30 tomorrow evening.

### **IV. Insert prepositions and postpositions where necessary .**

1. My sister is married, She has a family ... her own.
2. They all live ... her husband's parents.
3. They live ... Dostyk street.
4. Their house is a five-storeyed building.
5. Their flat is ... the third floor.
6. There are all modern conveniences ... the flat.
7. There is not much furniture ... drawing-room.
8. A square table is standing ... the middle ... the room.
9. There are 6 chairs ... the table.
10. ... the right-hand corner there is a small table ... a TV set.
11. Opposite the wall there is a sideboard where we keep dishes and glass-ware.
12. There is a beautiful carpet ... the floor.
13. ... the walls there are some pictures and my grandmother's portrait.

### **V. Insert prepositions and postpositions where necessary .**

1. The students ... our group are very good ... English.
2. They work very hard ... their pronunciation and grammar.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

- .....
3. When Kate fell ... the group ... the History ... the English languages everybody was ready to help her ... this subject.
  4. It took her a week to catch ... .. the group.
  5. Now she is very strong ... this subject.
  6. Peter makes many mistakes ... his speech.
  7. That's because he works ... fits and starts.
  8. Lectures ... Kazakh literature are very popular ... our students.
  9. What subject are you weak ...?
  10. Don't miss classes , otherwise you may fail ... English.

### **VI. Answer the questions.**

1. What is a department store?
2. What can one buy at the footwear department?
3. What size of shoes do you wear?
4. What are the best shoes for everyday wear in your opinion?
5. Do you always wear high heels?
6. What are your evening shoes like?
7. What are shoes made of ?
8. Can you afford very expensive dresses?
9. What is your favourite department?
10. When do you wear high boots?

### **VII. Insert prepositions and postpositions where necessary .**

1. ... the jewellery department they sell beautiful rings and bracelets.
2. May I try this dress ... ? I don't think it fits perfectly: it is too tight ... the hips.
3. This hat won't go ... your coat and besides its colour is too bright ... you.
4. Have you got these crimplene dresses ... dark-green?
5. What size do you take ... gloves?
6. ... what price are these brown buttons? 7. What colours are ... fashion this season?

### **VIII. Answer the questions.**

1. Who does the shopping in your family?
2. Where can one buy meat?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

3. What kind of meat do you know?
4. Do you prefer beef or pork?
5. What dishes can you cook of beef?
6. How can you cook mutton?
7. What meat do you usually make soup of?
8. Do you buy brown or white bread or both?
9. How much bread do you buy daily?
10. Where do you buy it ?
11. Are you fond of sweets?
12. Where do you buy them?
13. How often do you buy cakes?
14. What shop is especially famous for its cakes in Almaty?

**IX. Put the preposition at or on.**

1. She was tired. She's \_\_\_ bed now.
2. Were you \_\_\_ Tom's party last night?
3. Goodbye! I'll see you \_\_\_ the morning.
4. I'll see you \_\_\_ two weeks time.
5. She was born \_\_\_ 1961.
6. \_\_\_ the age of ten I wanted to be a firefighter.
7. My wife gave me a wonderful present \_\_\_ my birthday.
8. The coffee is \_\_\_ the shelf.
9. My pen is \_\_\_ my pencil case.
10. He's gone to work. He's probably \_\_\_ work now.
11. He lives \_\_\_ Australia.
12. I'll be taking my holiday \_\_\_ Christmas this year.
13. \_\_\_ my opinion you should buy the blue shirt.
14. I'll see you \_\_\_ Monday.
15. What will you be doing \_\_\_ New Year's Eve?
16. Buy some bread and milk \_\_\_ your way home.
17. \_\_\_ the end of a course students usually have a party.
18. The flowers \_\_\_ your garden are very beautiful.
19. There were many cars \_\_\_ the road today.
20. Are you doing anything \_\_\_ the weekend?
21. We live \_\_\_ this address.

**X. Fill in the blanks with the definite or indefinite articles wherever necessary.**

Once ... old man fell ill. His wife called ... doctor, and ... doctor gave him some medicine. As ... colour of ... medicine was black, ... woman made ... mistake and gave him some ink instead. When she discovered what had happened, she ran into ... room where ... man lay and shouted in horror: "What shall we do?" "You have drunk some ink instead of ... medicine ", ... old man tried to look as if it did not worry him, and said to his wife "It doesn't matter. Bring me ... piece of blotting (сорғыш) paper, I shall swallow (жұтып қою) it and shall soon be quite well".

## **Lesson 22**

### **Speaking**

**Speak on the following topics.**

- a) Your favourite season.
- b) Summer is the best season for rest.

**Describe your favourite season using words and word combinations given below:**

- season
- to snow
- to rain
- to pour with rain
- shower
- to freeze
- frost
- to set in
- to be covered with (snow, ice)
- to drizzle
- to melt
- to thaw
- to sleet
- to turn to worse (better)
- to look at one's best
- thunderstorm
- below (above) zero
- snow-storm
- to keep fine
- the temperature falls (rises) to

## Reading

### My Favourite Season

There are four seasons in a year: spring, summer, autumn and winter. My favourite season is spring and I'm sure a lot of people share this opinion with me. Spring is the season of hope, happiness and love. It is the season when nature awakens from her winter sleep: the ice is broken, the grass is beginning to shoot, the trees are bursting into leaf. Spring comes in March and ends in May. It begins with the unique spring smell — the smell of fresh air, future rains and greenery, the smell of hope and joy of life. It often rains in spring especially in April. People say: "April showers bring May flowers". Birds come back from the warm lands and twitter in the trees. I don't know anyone who wouldn't like spring.

## Vocabulary:

1. season – жыл мезгілі
2. to melt -еру
3. to rain – жаңбыр жауу
4. weather forecast – ая райы болжамы

## Answer the questions:

1. What month is it?
2. What day is it today?
3. What date is it today?
4. What's the weather like today?
5. Do you like such weather?
6. What do you like to do in such weather?
7. What is your favourite season? Why?
8. You like winter, don't you?
9. Do you like to go skating?
10. Can you skate?
11. You like to go for a walk in good weather, don't you?
12. How many seasons are there in a year? What are they?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

13. When does it often rain?  
14. When do trees become red and yellow? Is it beautiful picture?  
15. When does winter set in Almaty?

**Writing**

**TEST**

1. Choose the right variant. I talked to him ... the weekend.  
a) at  
b) on  
c) in  
d) the
2. The dog is ... the doghouse.  
a) at  
b) on  
c) in  
d) the
3. I eat breakfast ... the morning.  
a) at  
b) on  
c) the  
d) in
4. We arrived ... the airport in the evening.  
a) at  
b) on  
c) in  
d) the
5. I was ... work all day.  
a) on  
b) at  
c) in  
d) the
6. Put the book ... the table.  
a) at  
b) on  
c) in  
d) the
7. He is currently ... vacation.  
a) at  
b) on  
c) in  
d) the
8. I'll call you ... half an hour.  
a) the  
b) on  
c) in  
d) at



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. We had a good time ...  
the basketball game.

- a) at
- b) on
- c) in
- d) the

10. There are many good  
restaurants ... this city.

- a) at
- b) on
- c) in
- d) the

11. It gets very cold ...  
winter.

- a) at
- b) in
- c) on
- d) the

12. Berik doesn't have a job  
... the moment.

- a) the
- b) on
- c) in
- d) at

13. The telephone and the  
doorbell rang ... the same  
time.

- a) at
- b) on
- c) in
- d) the

14. He flew from Japan. He's  
probably ... Astana now.

- a) at
- b) on
- c) in
- d) the

15. Would you like to go out  
to dinner ... Friday night?

- a) at
- b) on
- c) in
- d) the

## **Lesson 23**

### **Speaking**

**Construct some sentences with the following words and word combinations:**

- What's your occupation?
- What's your profession?
- I am an engineer
- a worker
- a doctor
- a teacher
- a businessman
- an actor
- a driver
- a secretary
- a businessman
- a scientist
- a student
- We are colleagues
- I work at a plant
- at a bank
- at a school
- at a hospital
- at an institute
- at a theatre

Retell the story "choosing an occupation".

### **Reading**

#### **Choosing an occupation**

One of the most difficult problems a young person faces is deciding what to do about a career. There are individuals, of course, who from the time they are six years old "know" that they want to be doctors or pilots or fire fighters, but the majority of us do not get around to making a decision about an occupation or career. Choosing an occupation takes time, and there are a lot of things you have to think about as you try to decide what you would like to do. You may find that you will have to take special courses to qualify for a particular kind of work, or may find out that you will need to get some actual work experience, to gain enough knowledge to qualify for a particular job. Fortunately, there are a lot of people you can turn to for advice and help in making your decision. At most schools, there are teachers who are professionally qualified to counsel you and to give detailed information about job qualifications. And you can talk over your ideas with family members and friends who are always ready to

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
listen and to offer suggestions. But even if you get other people involved in helping you to make a decision, self evaluation is an important part of the decision-making process.

### Vocabulary:

1. majority - көпшілік
2. fire fighters - өрт сөндіруші
3. decision - шешім
4. particular – жеке, ерекше
5. to gain - табыс табу
6. to counsel- ақылдасу

### Answer the questions:

1. What's your occupation?
2. Do you work or study?
3. What faculty do you study at?
4. Are you a member of any public organization?
5. What's your profession?

## GRAMMAR

### THE PRESENT INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) TENSE

Жалпы осы шақ

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I work	I do not work	Do I work?
You work	You do not work	Do you work?
She (he) works	She (he) does not work	Does she {he} work
We work	We do not work	Do we work?
You work	You do not work	Do you work?
They work	They do not work	Do they work?

Present Indefinite (Simple) формасындағы етістіктер осы шақта, бірінші, екінші жақта жекеше және көпше түрде жіктік жалғау алмайды, тек жекеше түрде үшінші жақта жіктік жалғау -s-ті алады.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
Етістіктің болымсыз түрі.

Етістіктің болымсыз түрін бергенде, бірінші, екінші жақта жекеше түрде, көпше түрде барлық жақта етістіктің алдына *do not*-ты қоямыз, тек үшінші жақта жекеше түрде етістіктің алдына *does not* қойылады.

Сұраулы сөйлем.

Present Indefinite(Simple) формасында сұрақ қою үшін, бірінші, екінші жақта жекеше түрде, көпше түрде барлық жақта бастауыштың алдына *do* - көмекші етістігін қоямыз, тек үшінші жақта жекеше түрде етістіктің алдына *does* - көмекші етістігі қойылады.

Қолданылуы.

Present Indefinite (Simple) формасында істің басталу және аяқталу уақыты көрсетілмейді. Жалпы істелген істер және жүйелі түрде қайталанатын жалпы және күнделікті істер, бірінен соң бірі тіркесе келетін ақиқат іс.

Present Indefinite (Simple) формасында келесі мезгіл пысықтауыштар қолданылады: *Every day (week, year), on Monday, in the morning, always, still, usually.*

Қолдану кеңістігі:

a) Әңгімеге қатысып отырғандарға істің істелу барысы емес, істің нәтижесі, жалпы орындалуы. Мысалы: *We listen to music.* - Біз музыканы тыңдаймыз.

b) күнделікті немесе жалпы ұдайы қайталанатын іс.

Мысалы: *I wash my hands.* - Мен қолымды жуамын (күніне бірнеше рет).

c) бірінен соң бірі тіркесе келген істер.

Мысалы: *He gets up, washes himself and puts on.* - Ол ұйқыдан тұрады, жуынады, киінеді.

d) аксиомаға айналған істер. Мысалы: *Tea grows in India.* - Шай Индияда өседі.

*Two and two make four.* - Екіге екіні қосса төрт болады.

e) келешекте міндетті түрде істелетін іс.

Мысалы: *He arrives at 8 o'clock tomorrow.* - Ол ертең сағат 8-де келеді

Present Simple формасында келесі ойлау, қабылдау, көңіл-күйді білдіретін етістіктер қолданылады: *see, hear, sound,*

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
taste, know, understand, smell, believe, hate, love, wish, want, like, desire, dislike, disagree, hurt, feel.

### Writing

#### Exercises

#### I. Write the exercise in the Present Simple.

1. Usually my sister (to get) up at eight o'clock.
2. She (to be) a school girl. She (to go) to school in the afternoon.
3. Jane (to be) fond of sports. She (to do) her morning exercise every day.
4. For breakfast she (to have) two eggs, a sandwich and a cup of tea.
5. After breakfast she (to go) to school.
6. My working day (to begin) at seven o'clock.
7. I (to get) up, (to switch) on the radio and (to do) my morning Exercises. It (to take) me fifteen minutes.
8. At half past seven we (to have) breakfast. My father and I (to leave) home at eight o'clock. He (to take) a bus to his factory.
9. My mother (to be) a doctor, she (to leave) home at nine o'clock.
10. In the evening we (to gather) in the living-room. We (to watch) TV and (to talk).

#### II. Give negative and interrogative forms and translate the sentences.

1. On week days we usually get up at 8 o'clock.
2. We have English every day.
3. Ann always brings some flowers when she comes to the office.
4. They want to buy some new chairs.
5. We do some exercises in Writing.
6. He likes to speak English with her.
7. In the evenings my parents watch TV.
8. She knows how to tell the time in English.
9. His watch goes wrong.
10. Leaves become green in spring and yellow in autumn.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**III. Insert auxiliary verbs.**

1. ... you speak English?
2. Where...your son study?
3. I can't translate this text because I... not know these words.
4. Peter ... not do in for sports this winter because he is unwell.
5. When ... first spring flowers appear on the ground?
6. ... it often rain in autumn?
7. When ... it get light in January?
8. How long... it take you to get to the Institute?
9. ... it sometimes snow in summer?
10. Where ... you usually spend your week-ends?

**IV. Translate the sentences and put questions to them.**

1. He lives near Almaty.
2. My husband works at a factory.
3. My friend often receives many letters and telegrams.
4. Our English lesson lasts two hours.
5. She answers many letters and telegrams every day.
6. This engineer always finishes work at six o'clock in the evening.
7. My sister reads many articles in foreign newspaper every day.
8. That student reads very much.
9. In the morning he takes a cold shower.
10. She gives lessons in English.

**V. Complete the sentences.**

1. It is a nice place. Many people....there for a holiday. (go or goes?)
2. Some people ....always late. (is or are?)
3. A lot of people ...television every day. (watch or watches?)
4. How many people ....in this house? (live or lives?)
5. I need my glasses but I can't find ... (it or them?)
6. I am going to buy ....(a or some) new jeans today.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**VI. Write sentences from these words. Put the verb in the right form (arrive or arrives etc).**

1. (basketball / I / play / often).
2. (always / early / Sue / arrive).
3. (.Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear).
4. (work / Margaret / hard / usually).
5. (television / Tim / watch / never).
6. (like / chocolate / children / usually).
7. (Julia / parties / enjoy / always).
8. (dinner / we / have / always / at 7.30)

**VII. Answer the questions.**

1. You are a student, aren't you?
2. What faculty do you study at?
3. What foreign languages do you study?
4. What year student are you?
5. How many lectures do you have weekly? On what subjects are they?
6. Do you attend them regularly? Do you always take notes?
7. What is your favourite subject? Are you strong in it?
8. Are you good at languages?
9. How many exams will you have in summer?
10. What subject are you weak in?

**VIII. Write sentences from these words. Put the verb in the Present Indefinite.**

1. I often (to write) an exercise .
2. They (to play) in the yard .
3. I (not to read).
4. He (to sleep)?
5. She (not to eat) sweets.
6. The children (to eat) soup.
7. I (to write) a composition.
8. He (to play) football.
9. Reading books in the original (to be) one of the ways of mastering languages.
10. She (to be) very good at English grammar.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**1X. Insert prepositions and postverbal adverbs where necessary.**

1. Winter sets ... .. end ... December ... our parts. When the temperature falls ... twenty five degrees ... zero it gets very cold.
2. London is famous ... its fogs. Fogs are especially often ... autumn. When a thick fog spreads ... the city people can't see each other at arm's length.
3. It looks like rain : the sky is covered ... dark clouds, a cold wind is blowing ... the sea.
4. I prefer to stay indoors ... rainy weather.
5. Nature looks ... its best ... early spring.
6. The temperature has fallen ... zero and it is freezing.
7. If the weather keeps fine we can go ... the country ... Sunday.
8. Many people are fond ... winter sports.
9. It is pouring ... rain. You 'd better stay indoors.
10. The weather is very changeable ... our parts.

**X. Translate into English.**

1. Мен күнде таңертең сүт қатып шай ішемін.
2. Таңертең 8.30 институтқа келемін.
3. Күнде бізге 3 пар сабақ болады.
4. Әдетте бізге ағылшын тілі пәні аптасына екі рет болады.
5. Ағылшын пәнінен біз қызықты тақырыптарды оқимыз, грамматикалық жаттығуларды жасаймыз.
6. Марат күнде таңертең жаттығу жасайды. 7. Менің досым Ақтауда тұрады.



## Lesson 24

### Speaking

**Speak about yourself and your future profession.**

You need some of the following words and word combinations:

- I study at school
- at the institute
- at the university
- at Lyceum
- at a college
- What faculty do you study at?
- I study at the economical faculty
- mathematical
- philological
- law
- historical
- chemical
- biological
- I am a housewife
- He (she) is a pensioner.
- Are you a member of any public organization?
- I am a trade union member
- a sport club member
- student scientific society
- an interesting profession

2. Write a similar description of your future profession in about 50 words.

### Reading

#### Want to be a doctor

There are many interesting and noble professions. I want to be a doctor. It is an interesting profession. I understand that it is necessary to study a lot to become a doctor. I also understand that this profession requires great responsibility because it deals with the most precious thing that a person has - with his health. My mother and my grandfather are doctors. My grandfather is working as a surgeon in a hospital. I have been several times at the hospital and spent some time watching him working. His main task is to operate on the people. After each operation he takes care of patients until they are recovered. He listens very attentively to

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
what his patients tell him. He is always kind and attentive to his patients. They feel it and believe him, and it makes his work easier. I know that he wants to see all his patients able-bodied and I notice that he is happy when his patient is recovered. My grandfather can also help if somebody catches a cold or has a fever. My grandfather told me a lot of true stories about doctors and their profession. I love and respect my grandfather and want to become a doctor as well.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. noble - мәртебелі
2. necessary - қажетті
3. to require - талап ету
4. responsibility - жауапкершілік
5. precious - бағалы
6. surgeon - оташы
7. to be recovered – жазылып кету
8. able-bodied - сау

### **Answer the questions:**

1. Is it necessary to study to become a doctor?
2. Is profession of a doctor connected with a great responsibility? Why?
3. Have you seen a doctor working?
4. In your opinion, must a doctor be a kind and attentive person?
5. What do you think, is it pleasant to see a person healthy again?
6. What else do you know about doctors and their profession?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

1. Choose the right variant.

Nick ... a shower in the morning.

- a) to take
- b) take
- c) takes
- d) taked

2. Nelly ... come home very late.

- a) doesn't
- b) does
- c) do
- d) to do

3. I ... such wet weather.

- a) doesn't like
- b) don't likes
- c) don't like
- d) do like

4. My sister ... English.

- a) to learns
- b) learns
- c) learn
- d) learning

5. Our father ... very much.

- a) works
- b) working
- c) work
- d) to works

**TEST**

6. She ... like him.

- a) do
- b) doesn't
- c) don't
- d) does

7. I often ... here.

- a) come
- b) comes
- c) to come
- d) came

8. My mother often ... here.

- a) walking
- b) walked
- c) walks
- d) walk

9. You ... very early.

- a) gets up
- b) got up
- c) get up
- d) get ups

10. She often ... to see them.

- a) to come
- b) came
- c) comes
- d) come

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

d) do

11 ... .. put your dirty  
clothes on the floor!.

- a) do not
- b) did
- c) does
- d) do

12. ...you want to go to the  
conference?

- a) does not
- b) did
- c) does
- d) do

13. Please ..... walk on the  
grass.

- a) does not
- b) did
- c) do not

14. Choose the correct  
answer: Choose the word  
that does not belong to  
professions:

- a) driver
- b) teacher
- c) winter
- d) dentist

15. I'm afraid she ..... work  
in this office.

- a) does not
- b) did
- c) does
- d) do

## Lesson 25

### Speaking

**Describe the face of someone you know well using words and  
word combinations given below:**

- young
- old
- middle aged
- age
- tall
- short
- thin
- strong
- weak
- healthy
- head
- hair (dark, fair,  
black,)
- Face (round,  
oval)
- nose (long,  
short, straight, turned-

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

- |                             |                      |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| up), lips (red, full, thin) | • hands              |
| • eyes (large, small)       | • arms               |
| • ears                      | • legs               |
|                             | • feet (right, left) |

### Reading

#### Appearance: Parts of the Face

People who can't hear often learn to understand a spoken language with their eyes. They watch the mouth of the person talking and follow the movement of his lips. This is called lip-reading. Some people think the distance between your hair and your eyebrow is a sign of how intelligent you are. The bigger your forehead is, the more intelligent you are supposed to be. Nowadays, a person who doesn't like his or her nose can have it changed with plastic surgery. Plastic surgeons can change your face in many other ways too. They can make your cheeks a little rounder. If you don't like your chin, a plastic surgeon can break your jaw and re-make the whole lower half of your face. If you think your skin looks too old and wrinkled, he can take the wrinkles away and make you look twenty years younger.

Women often disagree about men having beards and moustache. But some women think that hair on a man's chin makes him look more attractive.

Usually, only women wear make-up. They are lucky. They can put a little black mascara on their eyelashes and some eye shadow on their eyelids, and look fresh and attractive, even when they are really tired.

### Vocabulary:

1. eye - көз
2. eyebrow - қас
3. forehead - шеке
4. cheek - бет
5. chin - иек
6. jaw - жақ
7. skin - тері
8. wrinkled - әжім басқан

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

9. eyelash - кіпчик

**Answer the questions:**

1. Maral is your best friend, isn't she?
2. What is her profession?
3. Where does she work?
4. How old is she?
5. What does she look like?
6. What colour is her hair?
7. What colour are her eyes?
8. She is tall, isn't she?
9. What kind of person is she?
10. Do you have much in common with her?
11. What do you usually talk about when you meet?
12. Is she well educated?
13. She has a family, hasn't she?
14. When did you see her last?
15. Describe the face of someone you know well.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

GRAMMAR

THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE

Жалпы өткен шақ

Бұл шақ іс-әрекеттің бұрын болғанын, осы кезбен байланыссыз, сөйлеу кезіне қатыссыз екендігін көрсетеді. Қазақ тіліндегі бұрынғы өткен шаққа сәйкес келеді.

Forming the simple past tense

Жалпы өткен шақтың жасалуы

Affirmative		Interrogative			Negative	
I	played	Did	I	play?	I	did not play.
You			you		You	
He			he		He	
She			she		She	
We			we		We	
You			you		You	
They			they		They	

The Past Indefinite tense-те қолданылатын пысықтауыштар:

**Yesterday, last year, last week, last Monday, last night, a week ago, a month ago, a year ago, the day before yesterday, the other day, in 2007.**

Хабарлы сөйлемде, етістіктер осы формаға тән өткен шақтың жұрнақтарын алады.

Мысалы: He explained it to me last week.

We collected a lot of stamps last year.

They went to the theatre the other day.

You wrote a long poem yesterday.

Етістіктің болымсыз түрі did not негізгі етістіктің алдында тұрады да, негізгі етістік осы шақта қалады

Мысалы: I didn't watch TV the day before yesterday.

She didn't go to the library 3 days ago.

You didn't buy any tickets last night.

We didn't visit France in 2007.

Сұраулы сөйлем.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Indefinite тобының өткен шағындағы сұраулы сөйлемде, did көмекші етістігін бастауыштың алдында қойып, негізгі етістікті тұйық райға қоясыз.

Мысалы: Did you read your favourite book yesterday? - Yes, I did.

Did he perform on the stage last night? - No, he didn't.

Did they go to the museum last Thursday? - Yes, they did.

Did she understand the play? - No, she didn't.

Арнайы сұрақ қою жолдары.

Мысалы: - When did you go to the theatre last? - I went there 5 days ago.

- Where did you meet this famous writer? - We met him in the library.

- Why did he watch the film? - Because he liked it.

- How many times did she visit the Art Museum last month? - She did it twice.

- Who played Hamlet in the famous film? - I did.

- Who could answer the question? - Nobody could.

### THE BASIC FORMS OF VERBS

Етістіктің негізгі формасы

Ағылшын етістігінің 4 тұлғасы болады.

I тұлғасы Infinitive Инфинитив Етістіктің тұйық райы	II тұлғасы The Past Simple Tense Жалпы өткен шақ	III тұлғасы Participle II Есімше II Ырықсыз есімше	IV тұлғасы Participle I Есімше I Жай есімше
Етістіктің 4 тұлғасы жасалу тәсілі бойынша 2 топқа бөлінеді: дұрыс және бұрыс етістіктер.			
Дұрыс етістіктер:			
I т to Δ to dress to play	II т Δed dressed played	III т Δed dressed played	IV т Δing dressing playing



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

to copy	copied	copied	copying
Бұрыс етістіктер.			
I т to Δ to speak to put to begin to go	II т □ spoke put began went	III т ○ spoken put begun gone	IV т Δing speaking putting beginning going
Бұрыс етістіктің 4 тұлғасының жасалу жолдарына арнайы ереже жоқ, сондықтан бұрыс етістіктер кестесін пайдаланып, оларды жаттап алу керек.			

**“to be” етістігінің өткен шақта жіктелуі**

**The verb “to be”**

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>
I was You/we/they were He/she/it was	I was not You/we/they were not He/she/it was not	Was I ? Were we/you/they? Was he/she/it ?

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I. Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs in the Past Simple.**

*(clean, die, enjoy, finish, happen, open, rain, start, stay, want)*

1. I... my teeth three times yesterday.
2. It was hot in the room, so I ... the window.
3. The concert ... at 7.30 ... at 10 o'clock.
4. When I was a child, I ... to be a doctor.
5. The accident ... last Sunday afternoon.
6. It's a nice day today but yesterday it ... all day.
7. We ... our holiday last year. We ... at a very nice place.
8. Ann's grandfather ... when he was 90 years old.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**II. Read about journey to Astana. Put the verbs in the correct order.**

(*Fly, get, have, leave, drive, arrive, park, go, have, go, wait, depart, arrive, take*).

1. Last Tuesday Asel ... from Almaty to Astana.
2. She ... up at six o'clock in the morning and ... a cup of coffee.
3. At 6.30 she... home and ... to the airport café where she ... breakfast.
4. Then she ... through passport control and ... for her flight.
5. The plane ... on time and ... in Astana two hours later.
6. Finally she ... a taxi from the airport to the hotel in the centre of Astana.

**III. Complete the sentences. Use these verbs in the Past Simple.**

1. She (to look) out of the window.
2. Her sister's flat (to be) clean.
3. She (to walk) slowly through the door and (to come up) to the gentleman.
4. She (to want) to find some work.
5. My friend (to begin) to work at an early age.

**IV. Complete the sentences with a verb first in the positive and then in the negative. *To show, to help, to book, to study, to paint, to work, to walk, to play.***

1. My sister ... English at school, but she .... .... German.
2. The doctor ... last Saturday ,but he ... ... on Sunday.
3. Yesterday Arman ....to work ,but he ... ... home.
4. My brother ... volleyball when he was young , but he ... ... chess.
5. I ... the photos to my brother, but I .... .... them to my sister.
6. The teacher ... me with the exercise but she ,, ,, my friend.
7. The secretary ... a table for lunch , but she ... ... a taxi.
8. Ann ... the living room, but she ... ... the bedroom.

**V. Complete the sentences. Use these verbs in the Past Simple.**

1. He ... very far from here. (to work).
2. I ... very early to prepare my breakfast. (to get up).

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

- .....
3. Caroline's bed ... in the room. (to stand).
  4. I... you to the theatre.( to invite).
  5. She ... for work. (to look).
  6. The long streets of Chicago ... new to Carrie.(to be).
  7. She ... nervous. ( to get ).
  8. ... you need any help? ( to do).
  9. I ... no time to do it .( to have)

### **VI. Give the principal forms of the following verbs.**

to run, to read, to know, to watch, to think, to write, to find, to invite, to play, to begin, to go, to work, to make, to buy, to walk, to build, to learn, to arrive, to speak, to have, to be, leave, to translate, to borrow, to grow.

### **VII. Put in am/ is/ are/ (present) or was / were (past).**

1. Last year she ... 22, so she ... 23 now. 2. Today the weather ... nice, but yesterday it ... very cold. 3. I ... hungry. Can I have something to eat? 4. I feel fine this morning but I...very tired last night. 5. Don't buy those shoes. They ... very expensive. 6. I like your new jacket ... it expensive? 7. This time last year I... in Paris. 8. 'Where ... the children?' I don't know. 9. They ... in the garden ten minutes ago.

### **VIII. Put in was / were or wasn't / weren't.**

1. We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room ... very small and it ... very clean.
2. George ... at work last week because he ... ill. He's better now.
3. Yesterday ... a public holiday so the shops ...closed. They're open today.
4. ... Sue and Bill at the party? Sue ... there but Bill ... .
5. Where are my keys? I don't know. They ... on the table but they're not there now.
6. You.... at home last night. Where ... you?

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### **IX. Fill in the blanks with the correct tense of the verbs given in brackets: Present Indefinite or Past Indefinite.**

1. I (to go) to the cinema yesterday.
2. I often (to go) to the cinema.
3. My friend (to go) to the cinema every day.
4. I (to do) my homework yesterday.
5. Marat (not to do) my home work yesterday.
6. She (to do) homework in the evening.
7. He (not to do) home work yesterday.
8. My sister (not to play) the piano yesterday.
9. I often (to write) a letter to my friend.
10. My friend (not to play) the piano every day.
11. An American (win) Wimbledon last year.

### **X. Translate into English.**

1. Менің інім кеше киноға барды.
2. Айман көшеден досын кездестірді.
3. Өткен жылы біз саяхаттадық.
4. Өткен аптада Сәкен әжесіне қоңаққа барды.
5. Кеше Арман ұшақпен Алматыға ұшты.
6. Мен Ұлы Отан соғысында дәрігер болғанмын.
7. Менің атам ұшқыш болған.
8. Біз педагогикалық институттың студенттері болғанбыз.
9. Бізде сендер сияқты жас болғанбыз.
10. Ол машина жасау фабрикасында инженер болған.

## **Lesson 26**

### **Speaking**

#### **Speak on the following topics.**

You have caught a bad cold. Your visit to the doctor.

Prepare a report “At the doctor’s” using the following words and word combinations:

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| • to be in good health | • to catch cold          |
| • to fall ill          | • to cough               |
| • to suffer from       | • to have a touch of flu |
| • it hurts             | • breakdown              |

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

- to stay in bed
- to have a rest
- to be in hospital
- to send for the doctor
- to give first aid
- the sick child
- to feel the pulse
- to take temperature
- to have a headache
- prescription
- to take the medicine
- to be (get) well soon

### Reading

#### At the doctor's

It is winter now. It is often cold. I can't say that I can stand colds. So, sometime ago I suddenly fell ill. I mounted a high temperature. I had a running nose and a sore throat. Also I had a splitting headache and a cough. My whole body ached. My mother fixed me a hot lemonade but that didn't help me much. She wanted to give me some aspirin tablets too, but there weren't any in our house. My mother told me to stay in bed, then she called for a doctor. The doctor came, remove his coat and put on his white gown. The doctor asked me to strip to the waist. He examined my lungs, felt my pulse and blood pressure, took my temperature. Then he examined my throat and said that it was a little inflamed. He said that is was a light case of the flu and told me to stay in bed and to have a rest. He wrote a prescription for a gargle and cough medicine. Also he gave me some sulfa pills, a slip for x-ray and blood examination. He prescribed cups and mustard plasters. The prescription, which the doctor left, was made up at the chemist's. I followed all the doctor's instructions and very soon I felt much better.

#### Answer the questions:

1. You were ill last month, weren't you?
2. What were the symptoms?
3. You consulted a doctor, didn't you?
4. What did the doctor tell you to do?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. Did you take his advice?
6. How long did you stay in bed?
7. When did you recover?
8. How do you feel now?
9. Do you spend much time in the open air?
10. Do you keep to a diet?
11. What is it necessary to do to be healthy?
12. What do you usually do when you have a headache?

**Writing**

1. Choose the right variant.  
My company ... a profit last  
year.  
a) made  
b) make  
c) maked  
d) makes
2. Robert ... a prize in a  
photography competition.  
a) win  
b) wined  
c) won  
d) to win
3. She ... into the room.  
a) walked  
b) to walk  
c) walk  
d) walkd

**TEST**

4. I ... sick yesterday so I  
didn't go to work.  
a) feel  
b) felt  
c) feeling  
d) feels
5. Christian ... down the  
stairs.  
a) fall  
b) falling  
c) fallen  
d) fell
6. Celine ... the song  
beautifully.  
a) sing  
b) sang  
c) to sing  
d) sings

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

7. Tony Blair ... the Prime  
Minister of England in 1997.

- a) become
- b) becomed
- c) becomes
- d) became

11. Someone ... my car a few  
years ago.

- a) steal
- b) stole
- c) stealed
- d) steals

8. My parrot ... away  
yesterday.

- a) fly
- b) flew
- c) flyed
- d) flewn

12. He ... last summer in the  
country.

- a) spend
- b) not to spend
- c) spent
- d) have spent

9. I ... the answer but the  
teacher didn't ask me.

- a) knew
- b) knowed
- c) know
- d) known

13. ... her mother ... a very  
tasty dinner yesterday?

- a) do/have
- b) does/had
- c) do/had
- d) did/cooked
- e) did /cook

10. Mr Smith ... me to play  
the piano. (teach)

- a) fly
- b) flew
- c) flyed
- d) flewn

14. Nick ... not ... to  
school yesterday.

- a) do/go
- b) have/go
- c) does/ go
- d) did /go

15. Yesterday we ... a test  
paper.

- a) write
- b) written
- c) writes
- d) wrote

## **Lesson 27**

**1. Ask your friend questions about his relatives.**

**2. Write the dialogues. Use these cues for the suggestions.**

to have a drink, to read the book, to play badminton, to go shopping, to go to the café, to go to the leisure centre, to come to the party, to buy the clothes, to go swimming, to watch films, to dance

**Answer the questions:**

1. Who helps you to prepare your lessons?
2. Who cooks dinner for you?
3. Who wakes you up in the morning?
4. Who gets up at eight o'clock?
5. Who takes a cold shower?
6. Who comes home early in the evening?
7. When do you get up?
8. When do you leave home?
9. When do your studies begin?
10. When do you leave the Institute?
11. When does your friend come to see you?
12. When does your brother get up?
13. When does your mother come home?
14. Where do you wash?
15. Where do you study?
16. Where do you sleep?
17. Where does your mother cook?
18. Where does your father read his papers?

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I. Finish the sentences.**

1. That is our classroom. That classroom is... .
2. This is your ice-cream. This ice-cream is... .
3. This is my sister's money. This money is... .
4. That is the Ninth Form's basket-ball team. This team is... .



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. Those are my sister's birthday cards. Those birthday cards are... .
6. This is my father's present. This present is... .

### **II. Answer the questions using mine, his, hers, ours, theirs.**

1. Is the book you are holding yours or your friend's?
2. Whose family is larger, yours or your friend's?
3. Whose house is bigger, yours or your aunt's (uncle's)?
4. Is the classroom you are in yours or is it another form's?
5. Whose eyes are darker, yours or your father's?

### **III. Complete the sentences.**

1. June, July and August are the ... months of the year. (sunny)
2. The pears are not so ... as the cherries. (ripe)
3. Postcards are ... than air-mail envelopes. (cheap)
4. Which month is ... September or October? (rainy)
5. The University library is ... in books on science than any other library in the town. (rich)
6. English is the ... subject for him. (difficult)

### **IV. Something, somebody, anything, anybody. Nothing, nobody.**

1. Can I do ... to help you?
2. He is our best jumper, ... can jump as high as he.
3. I prefer to take out ... interesting about the life of people in other countries.
4. Is there ... in the reading-room? - No, there isn't ... there.
5. What are you looking for? Have you lost ...?
6. I have found ... in the library about M. Auesov for my composition.
7. Have you invited ... to the birthday party?
8. There is ... waiting for you in the corridor.

### **V. Give the principal forms of the following verbs.**

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. to spend-  | 6. to send-  |
| 2. to win-    | 7. to leave- |
| 3. to choose- | 8. to give-  |

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

4. to sell-                      9. to find-
5. to buy-                      10. to invite-

### **VI. Give negative and interrogative forms and translate the sentences.**

We met on Monday on the 1<sup>st</sup> of July.  
We talked on Tuesday.  
We walked on Wednesday.  
We kissed on Thursday.  
We danced on Friday.  
On Saturday we cried.  
On Sunday we parted and said "Good -bye".

### **VII. Why do we use the definite article with the words underlined?**

1. I don't see any newspapers on the stand.
2. There are many counters in the large hall of the post-office.
3. The girl is counting the words in the telegram.
4. Look at the address on the envelope.
5. Have you sent the telegram?

### **VIII. Why do we use the definite article?**

1. The wind is blowing from the sea.
2. Take the packets and put them in the shopping bag.
3. We enjoyed every minute of the concert, didn't we?
4. This was during the Second World War.
5. Who won the basket-ball match, Arman?

### **IX. Why do we use the indefinite article with the words underlined?**

1. There is a library for grown-ups there too.
2. I want to give him a book as a present.
3. I have a letter from an English pen-friend.
4. We spent a week in the country.
5. Are you a basket-ball player?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**X. Can we count the things?**

1. The wind may bring black clouds.
2. They receive milk, butter and meat from their farm.
3. Will you tell me about English money?
4. The people marched in demonstrations for peace.
5. At the baker's, you can see loaves of white and brown bread.

**XI. Put in in/ on/at.**

1. Peter and Mary first met ... 1982.
2. Did you go out ... Monday evening?
3. Let's meet ... 8.30 tomorrow evening.
4. I'm starting my new job ... 7 June.
5. Does Nurlan work ... Saturdays?
6. I got up... 8 o'clock this morning.
7. My brother got married ... December.
8. Ermek isn't here ... the moment.

**Lesson 28**

**1. Compare your family with your friend's family.**

**2. Describe your life. Tell us.**

when and where you were born, who your parents are, what their professions are, how old you are, when you went to school.

**Answer the questions:**

1. Where does your friend live?
2. How many books do you read a month?
3. How many books do you take from the library?
4. How many letters do you write?
5. What books do your friends read?
6. What shower does your brother take?
7. What do you do in the morning?
8. What does your father do in the evening?
9. What does your mother do in the kitchen?
10. What do your friends do at the Institute?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

- .....
11. What do you do at the library?
  12. Do people usually watch films at the cinema or on video?
  13. Are cinemas expensive?
  14. How often do you go to the cinema or watch a video?

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I. Finish the sentences.**

1. This is my book. This book is... .
2. That is her car. That car is ... .
3. These are his photos. These photos are ... .
4. Those are our bags. Those bags are ... .
5. These are their essays. These essays are ... .
6. That is your wallet. That wallet is ... .
7. She owns that house. That house is ... .
8. I own that boat. That boat is ... .
9. Those jackets belong to them. Those jackets are ... .
10. These cars belong to us. These cars are ... .

**II. Fill in the blanks adjectives nice, thick, old, hot, red, little, thin, good, green, comfortable, small, big.**

1. There is a ... chair, in the room.
2. The ... man is my teacher.
3. Some of these pencils are ... , some are ... .
4. – Is your mirror ...? – No, it is not. It is ... .
5. Don't take the pie. It is ... .
6. How ... are you?
7. My English book is ... , his book is ... .
8. There is a ... garden in front of our house.

**III. Fill in the blanks some, any, no, not.**

1. There is ... bookcase in my bedroom.
2. I have ... English books on my shelf.
3. Give me ... milk, please.
4. – Have you ... tents in your camp? – Yes, we have ... .
5. I have ... green ink, but I have ... red ink.
6. There is ... park in front of our house.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
7. – Are there ... farms near your city? – No, there are ... .

**IV. Put in am, is, are, have, has.**

1. I ... a teacher.
2. My brother ... many silk ties. They ... nice.
3. How old ... your children?
4. ... your children any toys?
5. His wife ... a doctor at the hospital.
6. I ... a driver.
7. How many children ... your sister?
8. My brother and my sister ... good flats.

**V. Fill in the blanks much, many, few, little, a few, a little.**

1. There is ... ink in the ink-pot.
2. There are ... cups on the table.
3. I have ... pencils. Take one.
4. – Who has some ink? – I have ... .
5. Give me ... milk.
6. Mary has ... friends at the hospital.
7. Have I ... mistakes in my text?
8. We have ... pens.

**VI. Fill in the blanks with the definite or indefinite articles wherever necessary.**

1. There are three rooms and ... kitchen in her flat. ... kitchen is small.
2. My tie is made of ... silk.
3. I have ... English book. It is ... good book.
4. There is ... park in front of our school.
5. My father is ... teacher, my mother is ... doctor.
6. They are ... drivers. 7. Give me ... ink. It is on ... table.
8. My brother has ... red tie.
9. ... old woman at the window is my mother. She is ... housewife.
10. Don't make ... mistakes!

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**VII. Answer the questions.**

1. Are you a doctor?
2. Is there a school near your house?
3. Has your family a comfortable flat?
4. Have you many friends?
5. Are you at home in the evening?
6. Are there many English books on your shelves?
7. Is Almaty a big city?
8. Have they a clock on the writing-table?
9. Are you French?
10. Is there a shelf on the wall?

**VIII. Fill in the missing pronouns much or many.**

1. He translates ... letters into English.
2. The teacher gives us ... homework.
3. My brother reads ... .
4. Kate gets ... telegrams on her birthday.
5. My parents work too ... .
6. Does your son read ... ?
7. ... students study two foreign languages.
8. We sent letters to ... foreign firms.

**IX. Write the missing words in / at / on.**

1. I went to a party ... New Year's Eve.
2. I'm going on holiday ... August.
3. The banks open ... 9am.
4. I moved to Almaty ... 1987.
5. The meeting is ... Monday.
6. I'll call you ... half past ten.
7. The concert is ... 24 September.
8. My garden looks lovely ... spring.
9. I had a party ... my birthday.
10. I was born ... 1990.

**X. Why do we not use the articles before the nouns underlined?**

1. There are picture-books with coloured pictures and stories for small boys and girls.
2. They had a New Year tree with lights and decorations.
3. We can see new blocks of flats, schools, cinemas and shops in towns and villages.
4. The farm grows wheat, potatoes, vegetables and fruit.

**XI. Why do we use or do we not use the articles?**

1. We cannot buy all the books we want to read.
2. Spring is very nice season because it is the first warm season.
3. They had a New Year tree with lights and decorations.
4. For older children, there are novels, poems, plays, books on history ,geography and science.
5. The farmers sell milk, butter, eggs, vegetables and fruit at the market.

## Chapter II

### Lesson 1 Reading



**National Flag of the Republic of Kazakhstan** is a piece of right-angled cloth of sky-blue colour with a picture of the sun with rays in the center, under them - a soaring steppe eagle. The flagstaff has vertical line with national ornament. The picture of the sun, its rays, eagle and ornament are of golden colour. Width / length ratio of the flag is 1:2.

Monochrome blue of the National Flag of the Republic of Kazakhstan reflects not only the commitment to unity, but also reminds of cloudless sky, which was always the embodiment of peace, tranquility and prosperity for all nations.

In the language of heraldry the blue color, its shades correspond to such human qualities as honesty, loyalty, hope. Golden sun bathing in its rays, represents peace and wealth, and the steppe eagle - generosity and insight, height of the intentions of Kazakhstan people.

The author of the National Flag of the Republic of Kazakhstan is an artist Shaken Niyazbekov.

**National Emblem of the Republic of Kazakhstan** is circle-shaped and is a picture of a shanyrak (the cupola of a yurt) on the blue background, from which uyks (body bracket) like sun rays are being radiated. Pictures of mythical winged horses are on the right and left of the shanyrak. In the upper part of the emblem



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
there is a volume five-pointed star, and at the bottom – an inscription “Kazakhstan”. The pictures of the star, shanyrak, uyks, mythical winged horses, and inscription “Kazakhstan” are of golden colour.

The basis of the National Emblem of the Republic of Kazakhstan is shanyrak. It became the heart of the emblem. This is the hearth, integrity of the world, symbol of the fundamental principle of the state - family. Winged tulpar is an image of immortality, endless development and spiritual wealth of the people living in Kazakhstan under the common shanyrak. Tulpar is a symbol of maintenance of the sovereign Kazakhstan system. Winged tulpar is a flight, dream, and young generation, which always offer hope. The five-pointed star crowns the emblem. Each person has his own, guiding star. The government should also have such a star.

The authors of the National Emblem of the Republic of Kazakhstan are the architects Shota Ualikhanov and Zhandarbek Malibekov.

### **National Anthem of the Republic of Kazakhstan**

**Text: Nursultan Nazarbayev, Zhumeken Nazhimedenov**

**Composer: Shamshi Kaldayakov**

The golden sun of the sky,  
Golden grain of the steppe ,  
Legend of courage –

It is my country!

In a gray hared antiquity

Our glory was born,

My Kazakh people

Are strong by Honour.

*Chorus:*

Oh my people, oh my country,

I am your flower, created by you.

I am your song flowing out of you

My native land – My Kazakhstan!

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

The way was opened to the prosperity  
My land is wide open spaces  
Its unity is proper,  
I have an independent country.  
It welcomed the time  
Like an eternal friend,  
Our country is happy,  
Such is our country.

*Chorus:*

### **Vocabulary:**

1. volume - көлем
2. inscription - жазу
3. hearth – үй ошағы
4. integrity - бірлік
5. image of immortality - мәңгілік бейне
6. spiritual wealth - рухани байлық
7. maintenance - бекіту
8. a flight - ұшу
9. embodiment - біріктіру
10. tranquility - тыныштық
11. prosperity - гүлдену
12. heraldry - геральдика
13. loyalty - сенім
14. generosity - қайырымдылық
15. insight - қырағылық

### **Our Country**

Our Country is situated in the Central Asia. The area of Kazakhstan is 2 753 000 square kilometers. Its population is about 16 million. The population live mostly in towns and cities and large villages. The largest cities are Almaty, Karagandy, Shimkent, Pavlodar, and Astana. Astana is the capital of the Republic. Astana is situated in the central part of the country. Kazakh is the official language of the country, but it is not the only language which people speak in the country. Russian and other languages are spoken here too. Kazakhstan is the largest

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

state in the Central Asia. It extends some 1900 kilometers from the Volga River in the West to the Altai Mountains in the East and about 1300 kilometers from the Siberia plain in the North to the Central Asia deserts in the South. Kazakhstan borders China, Russia, Turkmenistan, Uzbekistan and Kirgizia. There is a long border coast line on the Caspian sea in the Southwest. There are a few rivers and lakes in Kazakhstan. The four rivers are the main resources of water in the country. They are Irtysh in the east, Syr-Darya in the southwest, Ili in the southeast and Ural in the northwest of the country. The largest lakes are Balhash, Zaisan, Ala-Kol and Tengis. The flora and fauna of the country are different. They depend on the climate of the area. They are richer in the south and poorer in the north.

Kazakhstan has no outlets to the ocean. It touches the Caspian Sea in the west and Aral Sea in the South. It has 14 regions, 84 cities and 209 towns. Major religion: ISLAM . (Sunni Branch)

Kazakhstan has been the member of the United Nations since 1992. There are more than 7 million 300 thousand Kazakh people in the world. About one million Kazakh people live outside from their homeland. The climate of the country is strongly continental. It is cold in winter and hot in summer. Rain usually falls in spring and autumn. Snow falls in all areas but not at the same time. In the south snow falls in October or November, in the north it falls as a rule in September or October. Sudden cold winds and snowfalls in winter often cause troubles for people. In spring green grass and flowers of different colours cover flat lands and hills.

Kazakhstan has well-development of heavy industry. The country suffers serious environmental problems. Agriculture takes a very important sector in the national economy. The people of the country grow wheat, millet, corn and cotton. As a sovereign state Kazakhstan has its own national flag, anthem, state emblem and national traditions and holidays.

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

## Vocabulary:

1. independent - тәуелсіз
2. sovereign - егеменді ел
3. to border - шектеу, шектес болу
4. lowland - ойпат
5. highland - таулы, қырат, үстірт
6. industrial - өнеркәсіпті
7. agricultural - ауылшаруашылық

## Answer the questions:

1. Where is the Republic of Kazakhstan situated?
2. What is the size of the area of Kazakhstan?
3. What can you say about the population of the Republic?
4. What is the capital of the Republic?
5. Where is it situated?
6. What is the official language of the country?

## GRAMMAR

### THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE (CONTINUOUS) TENSE

СОЗЫЛЫҢҚЫ ОСЫ ШАҚ

**to be (am, is, are) + v + ing (Participle I)**

Іс-әрекеттің сөйлеу кезінде болып, жалғасып жатқанын, аяқталмағанын білдіреді. Қазақ тіліндегі нақ осы шаққа тура келеді.

Present Progressive (Continuous) Tense мезгіл үстеулер арқылы

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I am writing He is writing She is writing	I am not writing He is not writing She is not writing	Am I writing? Is he writing? Is she writing?
We You are writing They	We You are not writing They	we Are you writing? they

беріледі: **now** (қазір), **at the moment** (осы уақытта), **right now** (дәл осы уақытта), **at this moment** (қазіргі мезетте).

Қолданылуы:

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

а) істің сөйлеп тұрған шақта даму барысында екенін көрсету.

Мысалы: She is conducting lecture at this moment. - Ол дәл қазір лекция оқып тұр (оқылып біткен жоқ).

б) қазіргі кезеңде істеліп жатқан іс.

Мысалы: He is writing a book now. - Ол (қазіргі) кітап жазып жатыр.

с) мәңгілік қозғалыстағы іс.

Мысалы: The earth is moving. - Жер айналып тұр.

д) келешекте жоспарлап қойылған, міндетті түрде орындалатын істі, сөйлеп тұрған кезде осы шақта айтуға болады.

Мысалы: He is coming on Friday. - Ол жұма күні келеді (ол туралы алдын ала уәделескенбіз).

### Writing

#### Exercises

#### I . Write sentences and open the brackets, put the verb in the Present Continuous.

1. I (to write) an exercise now.
2. They (to play) in the yard now.
3. I (not to read) now.
4. He (to sleep) now?
5. She (not to eat) sweets now.
6. The children (to eat) soup now.
7. I (to write) a composition now.
8. He (to play) football now.
9. Look at the sky: the clouds (to move) slowly, the sun (to appear) from behind the clouds, it (to get) warmer.

#### II . Complete the sentences.

1. The boys (to run) about in the garden.
2. I (to do) my homework.
3. John and his friends (to go) to his library.
4. Ann (to sit) at her desk. She (to study) geography.
5. A young man (to stand) at the window. He (to smoke) a cigarette.
6. The old man (to walk) about the room.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

7. The dog (to lie) on the floor.
8. You (to have) a break?
9. What language you (to study)?
10. Who (to lie) on the sofa?
11. What they (to talk) about?
12. It still (to rain)?

**III . Write the sentence in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.**

1. I (to read) books in the evening.
2. I (not to read) books in the morning.
3. I (to write) an exercise now.
4. I (not to write) an essay now.
5. They usually (to play) in the yard.
6. They (to play) in the street now.
- 7.They (to play) in the room now?
8. He (to help) his mother every day.
9. He (to help) his mother every day?
10. He (not to help) his mother now.
- 11.You (go to) to school on Sunday?
12. My friend (not to like) to play football.
13. I (not to read) now.
14. He (to sleep) now.
- 15.We (not to go) to the country in winter.
16. My sister (to eat) sweets every day.
17. She (not to eat) sweets now.
18. They (to do) their homework in the afternoon.
19. They (not to go) for a walk in the evening.
20. My father (not to work) on Sunday.
21. He (to work) every day.

**IV. Write the sentence in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.**

1. They (to read) many books.
- 2.They (to read) many books?
- 3.They (not to read) many books.
4. The children (to eat) soup.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. The children (to eat) soup now?
6. The children (not to eat) soup now
7. You (to play) volley-ball well?
8. What Nick (to do) in the evening?
9. When you (to play) volley-ball?
10. He (to go) to the cinema in the evening?
11. We (not to dance) every day.
12. Look! Kate (to dance).
13. Kate (to sing) well?
14. Where he (to go) in the morning?
15. He (not to sleep) after dinner.
16. When you (to sleep)?
17. Nina (not to sleep) now.
18. Where John (to live)? - He (to live) in England.

### **V. Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs.**

*build cook go have stand stay swim work*

1. Please be quiet. *I'm working.* "Where's John?" "He's in the kitchen. He ... ."
- "You ... on my foot." "Oh, I'm sorry." Look! Somebody ... in the river. We're here on holiday. We ... at the Central Hotel.
- "Where's Ann?" "She ... a shower". They ... to a new theatre in the city centre at the moment. We ... a new hotel now.

### **VI. Translate into English:**

1. Мен теледидар көріп отырмын.
2. Менің сіңілім аулада ойнап жүр.
3. Сен не туралы ойлап отырсың.
4. Біз бақшада алма теріп жатырмыз.
5. Апам маған көйлек тігіп отыр.
6. Біз ағылшын сабағын оқып жатырмыз.
7. Мен досыма хат жазып отырмын.
8. Мен семестр соңында тапсыратын тест туралы ойлап отырмын.
9. Құрылысшылар Алматыда жаңа үй салып жатыр.
10. Менің апам маған шұлық тоқып отыр.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**VII . Write the sentence in the Present continuous.**

1. Jim (to watch) television.
2. He (not to play) guitar.
3. Please be quiet, I (to work).
4. Tom (to have) a shower at the moment.
5. Take an umbrella with you, it (to rain).
6. You can turn off the television, I (not to watch).
7. Why are you under the table. What (to do) you?
8. Listen! Somebody (to play) the piano.
9. My granny (not to rest) now.
10. They (not to drink) tea now. I (to think) they (to watch) TV.
11. I (to have) no time now, I (to have) dinner.
11. Where Tom and Nick (to be) now? –They (to have) a smoke in the garden.

**VIII . Put down disjunctive questions.**

*The child is crying, isn't he?*

1. We are cleaning the windows. They are not wearing their coat, it isn't cold.
2. We are waiting our friends.
3. He isn't working today.
4. The students are gathering apples in the garden.
5. My granny is feeling well at this moment.

**IX . Write questions from these words. Use *is* or *are* and put the words in order.**

1. (*working / Paul / today?*) *Is Paul working today?*
2. (*what / doing / the children?*)
3. (*you / listening / to me ?*)
4. (*where / going / your friend?*)
5. (*your parents / television / watching?*)
6. (*what / cooking / Ann?*)
7. (*why / you / looking / at me ?*)
8. (*coming / the bus?*)



# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

## **X . Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, she / he / isn't etc.)**

1. Are you watching football?
2. Is she wearing a watch?
3. Are you eating something?
4. Is it snowing?
5. Is my sister sitting on the floor?
6. Are you feeling well?

## **Lesson 2**

### **Reading**

#### **Astana**

Astana is the new capital of Kazakhstan.

On the 10 th of December 1997 the city Akmola was declared the capital of the sovereign Republic of Kazakhstan. Akmolinsk was founded in 1830 as a military fortress. In 1862 it became the city of Akmolinsk because of its ever growing importance as it was on the trading way from Tashkent to the Urals. During the October Socialist Revolution in 1917 Akmolinsk was a small provincial town.

Only in the period of virgin lands development Akmolinsk became known all over the world. The whole Soviet Union helped our republic to build Akmolinsk. Many hundreds of highly qualified specialists came to work there. In 1961 Akmolinsk was renamed into Tselinograd.

Astana is a big centre of automobile, railway and air transport communication. It connects the Central Kazakhstan with its southern and western regions, with Siberia, Urals and the Volga and other regions. Astana is on the banks of the Ishim River and its population is about 300 thousand people. In 1997 – 98 the Government House, the Parliament House, the Palace of Congress was reconstructed in Astana. The new President's Residence and many new social buildings and dwellings are built here too. The government of Kazakhstan started removing to the new capital in 1997. Astana is 1200 km away from Almaty. Akmola was formally renamed as Astana in May 1998. On the

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
10<sup>th</sup> of June 1998 the International presentation of the new capital-Astana took place. Astana will become the centre of business contacts, as it is situated in the centre of the Astana Continent. Nowadays Astana – is a big construction site and soon it will become one of the biggest and beautiful cities of the XXI century.

### Vocabulary:

1. military fortress - әскери бекініс
2. qualified - сапалы, жарамды
3. renamed - қайта аталу
4. trading way - сауда жолы
5. dwellings - пәтерлер

### Answer the questions:

1. What is the capital of Kazakhstan, now?
2. Where is Astana situated?
3. What do you know from the history of Astana?
4. Astana is an industrial centre, isn't it?
6. How far is Astana from Almaty?
7. When did the government begin to remove to Astana?

### Writing

Put down the verb in the Present Continuous

1. We ... playing computer games.  
a) is  
b) am  
c) are  
d) have  
e) has

### TEST

2. I ... cooking the birthday cake.  
a) is  
b) am  
c) are  
d) have  
e) has

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

3. Meruert ... dancing very well.

- a) am
- b) has
- c) have
- d) is
- e) are

4. Altair and Askar... in the garden

- a) are playing
- b) is playing
- c) was playing
- d) were playing
- e) playing

5. ... they ... ice-cream now?

- a) are/playing
- b) is/knowing
- c) are/eating
- d) is/eating
- e) am/eating

6. We ... to tape-recording at this moment.

- a) is listening
- b) are listening
- c) am listening
- d) was listening
- e) were listening

7. What language ... now?

- a) are you studying
- b) he studying
- c) she studying
- d) studying
- e) am I studying

8. My daughters ... in the London's Hyde Park.

- a) am walking
- b) is working
- c) are walking
- d) walking
- e) walks

9. Where (you go tonight?)

- a) Where are you going tonight?
- b) Where to going tonight?
- c) Where is he going tonight?
- d) Where going tonight?
- e) Where she going tonight?

10. (We fly) to Budapest this weekend.

- a) we flying to Budapest this weekend.
- b) we is flying to Budapest this weekend.
- c) we was flying to Budapest this weekend.
- d) we were flying to Budapest this weekend.
- e) we are flying to Budapest this weekend.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

11. (She arrive) tomorrow.

- a) They are arriving tomorrow.
- b) She is arriving tomorrow.
- c) She isn't arriving tomorrow.
- d) I'm arriving tomorrow.
- e) He's arriving tomorrow.

12. What (you do) after class?

- a) What is he doing after class?
- b) What is she doing after class?
- c) What are you doing after class?
- d) What are they doing after class?
- e) What am I doing after class?

13. Complete the sentence with **I** or **You**

... am going to buy some books tomorrow.

- a) he
- b) she
- c) you
- d) I
- e) they

14. ... are going to sell their car.

- a) I
- b) You
- c) He
- d) She
- c) They

15. Are ... going to invite John to your party?

- a) she
- b) he
- c) I
- d) You
- e) they

### Lesson 3

#### Reading

#### Almaty

Almaty is the modern city of the Republic of Kazakhstan and one of the most important cities in the Central Asia. It is located at the foot of Alatau mountains and the green areas within the afforded it a reputations as one of the most beautiful cities in the Commonwealth of Independent States. The city occupies the

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

territory of 16.2 thousand hectares. Almaty is a city of a million people, the population of Almaty is over 1.5 million people.

Today Almaty is a major cultural centre of our Republic. It has many theatres, cinemas, parks, museums, shops and other places of culture. The most famous theatres are the Opera and Ballet Theatre is named after Abai Kunanbaev, the Drama Theatre is named after the Kazakh writer M.Auezov and also Russian, Uigur and Korean theatres. The well-known museums are the Central Republican museum, the Museum of Kazakh Folk Instruments, the State Art Museum and others. As Almaty is an educational centre there are many kinds of schools of general education, gymnasiums, colleges, and other Higher Educational Establishments including the Academy of Sciences. Almaty is a business, finance and trade centre with many banks, trade houses, enterprises, foreign firms and Embassies of different countries. Every year many tourists come to our Republic to enjoy a marvelous view of mountains and to go sightseeing of Almaty. They can visit many famous places of interest such as: the Kazakh Aul in Koktobe, Shimbulak, the Medeo Ice-Rink. The visitors can spend their leisure time in different entertainment places. For example, at the Circus, Parks: “Fantasy World”, “Bobek”, “Family” or at the National Park, night clubs and restaurants. The guests can put up at the famous hotels as: “Rakhat Palace”, “Ankara” – the five-star hotel, “Kazakhstan”, “Astana” and others.

Almaty is an industrial centre with a highly developed engineering, electric light and chemical industries.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. locate - орналасу
2. afford - мүмкіншіліктің болуы, беру
3. reputation - атақ
4. Establishments - мекеме
5. Embassies - елшілік
6. leisure time - бос уақыт
7. entertainment - көңіл көтеретін, меймандос

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Answer the questions:**

1. Do you live in Almaty?
2. Is Almaty a modern city?
3. Where is Almaty situated?
4. What is there in Almaty?
5. Almaty is educational centre, isn't it? Prove it.
6. What places can tourists visit?
7. What can you say about the nature of Almaty?

**GRAMMAR**

**THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE**

Өткен созылыңқы шақ

**to be (was, were) +vIV (Participle I)**

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>
I was reading	I was not reading	Was I reading?
You were reading	You were not reading	Were you reading?
He, she was reading	He was not reading	Was he reading?
We were reading	We were not reading	Were we reading?
You were reading	You were not reading	Were you reading?
They were reading	They were not reading	Were they reading?

Қолданылуы:

a) өткендегі белгілі бір уақытта болып жатқан істі айту.  
*He was building this house at that time.* - Сол уақытта ол үй салып жатты.

b) өткенде қайталана, бірнеше дүркін істелген процесс-іс.  
*I was passing the bridge several times.* - Мен бұл көпірден бірнеше рет өтіп жүрдім.

c) өткенде келешекке жоспарланған процесс-іс.  
*He was planning to write a book.* - Ол кітап жазатын болып жоспарлаған.

d) өткендегі бірнеше істердің бір уақытта while арқылы берілуі.

*I was translating the article, while he was reading it.* - Ол кітап оқып жатқанда, мен мақаланы аудардым.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
е) істелініп жатқан істің **when + Past Indefinite** арқылы берілуі.

*I was watching TV when you rang.* - Сен телефон соққанда, мен теледидар көріп жатқанмын.

ф) ойламаған, жоспарланбаған, қайталана істелген процесс-іс. always, continually үстеулер арқылы беріледі.

*He was continually bringing flowers.* - Ол қоярда-қоймай гүл әкеліп жүрген.

### Writing

#### Exercises

##### I. Write the exercise in the Past Continuous.

1. I ... a newspaper (to read) when it rained... .
2. Ann ... home (to go) at 6 o'clock yesterday.
3. My friend ... in the shop from 8 a.m. till 3 p.m. yesterday (to work).
4. I ... a letter when you phoned me yesterday (to write).
5. What ...you ...when I opened the door (to do)?
6. My grandmother ... at the window when I came in (to sit).
7. What ...your father...from eight till nine yesterday (to do)?

##### II. Fill in the blanks with the correct tense of the verbs given in brackets: Past Indefinite or Past Continuous.

1. I (to go) to the cinema yesterday.
2. I (to go) to the cinema at four o'clock yesterday.
3. I (to go) to the cinema when you met me.
4. I (to do) my homework the whole evening yesterday.
5. I (not to do) my home work yesterday.
6. She (to do) homework when mother came home.
7. He (to do) home work yesterday.
8. My sister (not to play) the piano yesterday.
9. I (to write) a letter to my friend when you rang me.
10. My friend (not to play) the piano at four o'clock yesterday.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**III . Fill in the blanks with the correct tense of the verbs given in brackets: Present or Past Continuous.**

1. I (to write) an English exercise now.
2. I (to write) an English exercise at this time yesterday.
3. My little sister (to sleep) now.
4. My little sister (to sleep) at this time yesterday.
5. My friends (not to do) their homework now.
6. They (to play) volley-ball now.
7. My friends (not to do) their homework at seven o'clock yesterday.
8. They (not to play) volley-ball at this time yesterday.
9. I (to eat) an ice-cream when you rang me up yesterday?
10. What your father (to do) now?

**IV. Put the verb in the correct form, Past Continuous or Past Simple.**

1. Carol **broke** (break) her arm last week.
2. It ... (happen) when she ... (paint) her room. She ... (fall) of the ladder.
3. The train ... (arrive) at the station when Paula ... (get) off.
4. Two friends of hers, John and Jenny, ... (wait) to meet her.
5. Yesterday Sue ... (walk) along the road when she ... (meet) Jim.
6. He ... (go) to the station to catch a train and he ... (carry) a bag.
7. They ... (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

**V. Put the verb into Past Continuous or Past Simple.**

1. A: What **were you doing** (you / do) when the phone **rang** (ring)?  
B: I **was watching** (watch) television.
2. A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?  
B: Yes, she ... (study).
3. A: What time ... the post (arrive) this morning?  
B: It ... (come) while I ... (have) breakfast.
4. A: Was Margaret at work today?  
B: No, she ... (not / go) to work. She was ill.



**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

- .....
5. A: How fast ... (you / drive) when the police (stop) you?  
B: I don't know exactly but I ... (not / drive) very fast.
  6. A: ... (your team / win) the football match yesterday?  
B: No, the weather was very bad, so we ... (not / play).
  7. A: How ... (you /break) the window?  
B: We play football. I (kick) the ball and it (hit) the window.
  8. A: ... (you / see) Jenny last night?  
B: Yes, she ... (wear) a very nice jacket.
  9. A: What ... (you / do) at 2 o'clock this morning?  
B: I was asleep.
  10. A: I ... (lose) my key last night.  
B: How ... (you / get) into your room?

**VI . Complete the questions. Use was / were -ing. Use what / where / why if necessary.**

1. (you / live ) <b>Where were you living in 1990?</b>	In London. I was asleep.
2. (you / do)... at 2 o'clock?	No, it was sunny.
3. (it / rain) ... when you got up?	Because she was in a hurry.
4. (Ann / drive) ... so fast?	No, a T -shirt
5. (Tim wear) ... a suit yesterday?	

**VII . Write positive or negative sentences.**

1. (wear a jacket) **He wasn't wearing a jacket.**
2. (carry / a bag)
3. (go / to the dentist)
4. (eat/ an ice-cream )
5. (carry / an umbrella)
6. (go / home)
7. (wear / a hat)
8. (ride / a bicycle)

**VIII . Put the verb in the Present Continuous or the Present Simple.**

1. *Excuse me. Do you speak (you / speak) English?*
2. "Where is Tom?" "He's (to have) a shower".

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

3. I ... (not / watch) television very often.
4. Listen! Somebody ... (sing).
5. Sandra is tired. ... (she / want) to go home now.
6. How often ... (you / read) a newspaper?
7. "Excuse me but ... (you / sit) in my place". "Oh I'm sorry".
8. I'm sorry, ... (I / not / understand). Can you speak more slowly?
9. It's late. ... (I / go) home now. ... (you / come) with me?
10. What time ... (your father / finish) work in the evenings?
11. You can turn off the radio ... (I / not / listen) to it.
12. "Where is Paul?" "In the kitchen. ... (he / cook) something".
13. Martin ... (not / usually / drive) to work. He ... (usually / walk).
14. Sue ... (not / like) coffee ... (she / prefer) tea.

### **IX . Write the three forms of the verbs and translate.**

1. *to lie - lay - lain - lying* (өмірік айту, жаму)
2. to make
3. to get
4. to break
5. to catch
6. to throw
7. to hear
8. to happen
9. to do
10. to heat
11. to give

### **X . Look at / look for / look after.**

#### **Translate these sentences.**

look at (қарау), look for (= try to find), look after (= take care of, keep safe)

1. She is looking at her watch.
2. Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.
3. Why are looking at me like that?
4. He's lost his key. He is looking for it.
5. I'm looking for Sarah. Have you seen her?
6. When Barbara is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.
7. Don't lose this book. Look after it. (= keep it safe)

## **Lesson 4**

### **Reading**

#### **NAURYZ MEIRAMY – A GREAT HOLIDAY**

Nauryz is common to all people of Turkish origin. A week before all the people begin to prepare for the holiday. At first all doors and windows should be open wide to let the fresh air in the dwellings. Then everything: clothes, carpets, blankets and etc. should be taken out in the yard and hanged on the sun. After that all the housewives begin to clean and tidy up their houses. On the 21<sup>st</sup> of March at night a table is laid with a beautiful table-cloth, and seven kinds of dishes are put on it. Everything is left for a night. They say that at night angels fly to taste all the dishes and bless water. Early in the morning every member of the family ought to wash their hands and faces and to taste the dishes in order to be healthy and wealthy. Then the traditional dish is prepared in every house. It's a kind of soup consisting of seven ingredients, including salt and pepper. Almost everybody has to taste it. So guests are invited by every house-keeper. People eat, drink tea or kymyz, sing songs, dance, play the dombra and have a good time. During Nauryz it is not allowed to drink strong drinks, to quarrel, to beat smb. Everybody should forgive his enemies.

#### **Wedding ceremony of the Kazakh people**

In Kazakh tradition, the wedding ceremony consisted of three stages. The first stage was matchmaking. Parents of the future bridegroom sent relative to the father of the future bride. This ceremony was called the kuda tusu. If the bride's parents agreed, they fixed the wedding day and the ransom (kalym).

The second stage was opening of the door (esyk ashu). The bridegroom or bridegroom's parents or relatives visited the bridlers. They brought the ransom. The ransom consisted of money, clothes, gold things, horses. The content of ransom was negotiated by parents.

The third stage was the wedding (kyz bery). It was arranged in the bride's house. She invited all her friends to say "goodbye". The bride's parents invited all their relatives and guests. After the first

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
night of marriage the bride had to wear a special woman's head-dress.

### Vocabulary:

1. fresh air - таза ауа
2. blanket - көрпе
3. to tidy up - тазалау
4. angels - періштелер
5. to bless - бата беру
6. to quarrel - ұрысу
7. wedding ceremony - үйлену тойы
8. matchmaking - құда түсу
9. bride - қалыңдық
10. bridegroom - күйеу жігіт
11. negotiate - келіссөз жүргізу

### Answer the questions:

1. When the people celebrate Nauryz Meiramy?
2. What do people do before the holiday?
3. How many ingredients consists the "Nauryz Kozhe"?
4. What do people do in this day?

### Writing

Put down the verb in the Past Continuous

1. She (to cook) whole day yesterday.  
a) was cooking  
b) is cooking  
c) were cooking  
d) are cooking  
e) cooked

### TEST

2. We (to wash) the floor in our flat from three till four yesterday.  
a) is washing  
b) be washing  
c) are washing  
d) were washing  
e) was washing

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

3. They (to go) to the theatre at four o'clock yesterday.

- a) was going
- b) were going
- c) are going
- d) is going
- e) went

4. Ajana (to do) her homework the whole evening yesterday.

- a) are doing
- b) be doing
- c) were doing
- d) is doing
- e) was doing

5. When we were in the country last summer, I (to go) to the wood one day.

- a) is going
- b) are going
- c) was going
- d) were going
- e) gone

6. They told me a funny story. I still (to laugh) when we came to school.

- a) is laughing
- b) are laughing
- c) was laughing
- d) were laughing
- e) laughed

7. When I came home, my little sister (to sleep).

- a) is sleeping
- b) are sleeping
- c) were sleeping
- d) was sleeping
- e) slept

8. When Kate opened the door, the children (to dance) round the fir-tree.

- a) are dancing
- b) were dancing
- c) are dancing
- d) is dancing
- e) was dancing

9. They (to get) ready to go out when it began raining.

- a) are getting
- b) was getting
- c) were getting
- d) is getting
- e) getting

10. He (to read) on the sofa when I came in and sat down beside him.

- a) was reading
- b) were reading
- c) is reading
- d) are reading
- e) be reading

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

11. What you (to do) at five  
o'clock yesterday?

- a) doing
- b) are doing
- c) was doing
- d) is doing
- e) were doing

12. I (to play) the piano at  
five o'clock yesterday.

- a) am playing
- b) was playing
- c) are playing
- d) were playing
- e) be playing

13. When I prepared  
breakfast in the morning, I  
(to cut) my finger.

- a) am cutting
- b) are cutting
- c) was cutting
- d) were cutting
- e) cut

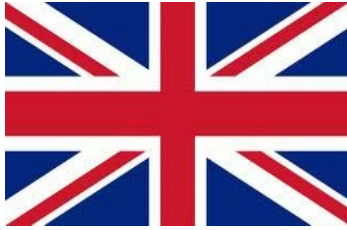
14. Last year I (to go) to the  
United States when You  
went to Britain.

- a) were going
- b) was going
- c) is going
- d) are going
- e) go

15. He (to come) back to St.  
Petersburg on the fifth of  
January last winter.

- a) is coming
- b) are coming
- c) were coming
- d) was coming
- e) went

## Lesson 5



### **The Union Jack**

The flag of the United Kingdom, known as the Union Jack, is made up of three crosses. The upright red cross is the cross of St. George, the patron saint of England. The white diagonal cross (with the arms going into the corners) is the cross of St. Andrew, the patron saint of Scotland. The red diagonal cross is the cross of St. Patrick, the patron saint of Ireland. St. David is the patron saint of Wales.

### **The Royal Arms**

In the Royal Arms three lions symbolize England, a lion rampant - Scotland, and a harp - Ireland. The whole is encircled and is supported by a lion and a unicorn. The lion has been used as a symbol of national strength and of the British monarchy for many centuries. The unicorn, a mythical animal that looks like a horse with a long straight horn, has appeared on the Scottish and British royal coats of arms for many centuries, and is a symbol of purity.

### **The National Anthem of the UK**

People all over the world know the first line of the national anthem of Great Britain which is called "God Save the Queen". It was adopted after the War with Napoleon.

God save our gracious Queen  
Long live our noble Queen  
God save the Queen!  
Send her victorious  
Happy and glorious  
Long to reign over us

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
God save the Queen!

**Vocabulary:**

1. upright - тік, колонна
2. the patron - қорғаушы, қамқоршы
3. saint - әулие
4. rampant - артқы аяғымен тұрған
5. harp - арфа
6. encircle - қоршалу
7. strength - күшті
8. unicorn - бір мүйізді жануар
9. horn - мүйіз
10. purity - тазалық
11. gracious - мейрімді, сүйкімді
12. noble - ақсүйек, айбынды
13. glorious - атақты, тамаша

**Reading**

State / Country	Capital	People	Language	Symbol
Great Britain	London	The British	English	
England	London	The English	English	a rose.
Scotland	Edinburgh	The Scots	Scottish	a thistle.
Wales	Cardiff	The Welsh	Welsh	a daffodil and a leek
Northern Ireland	Belfast	The Irish	Irish	a shamrock and a red hand.



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Geat Britain = England, Wales and Scotland.**

**The United Kingdom =England, Wales, Scotland and Nothern  
Ireland.**

### **Great Britain**

The United Kingdom (or Great Britain) is situated on the British Isles. The British Isles consist of two large islands, Great Britain and Ireland, and about five thousand small islands. Their total area is over 244,000 square kilometers.

The United Kingdom is made up of four countries: England, Wales, Scotland (on the island of Great Britain), and Northern Ireland (on the island of Ireland). Their capitals are London, Cardiff, Edinburgh, and Belfast respectively. The capital of the UK is London.

The British Isles are separated from the European continent by the North Sea and the English Channel. The western coast of Great Britain is washed by the Atlantic Ocean and the Irish Sea.

The surface of the British Isles varies very much. The north of Scotland is mountainous and is called the Highlands, while the south, which has beautiful valleys and plains, is called the Lowlands. The north and west of England are mountainous, but all the rest — east, centre, and south-east — is a vast plain. Mountains are not very high. Ben Nevis in Scotland is the highest mountain (1,343 m). There are a lot of rivers in Great Britain, but they are not very long. The Severn is the longest river, while the Thames is the deepest one. The mountains, the Atlantic Ocean, and the warm waters of Gulf Stream influence on the climate of the British Isles. It is mild the whole year round.

The UK is one of the world's smallest countries. Its population is over 57 million. About 80 % of the population is urban. The UK is a highly developed industrial country. It is known as one of the world's largest producers and exporters of machinery electronics, textile, aircraft, and navigation equipment. One of the chief industries of the country is shipbuilding. The UK is a constitutional monarchy. In law, Head of the State is Queen. In practice, Queen reigns but does not rule. The country is ruled by the elected government with the Prime Minister at the head.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### Vocabulary:

1. occasionally - кейде, сирек
2. mainland - континент, материк, үлкен арал
3. to consist of - тұрады, құрамы
4. to occupy - алып жатыр, орналасу
5. to separate - бөлу
6. the English Channel - Ла-Манш бұғазы
7. to surround - қоршау
8. shallow - кіші
9. variety - әр түрлі
10. scenery - көрініс

### Answer the questions:

1. What is the official name of Great Britain?
2. Where is the U. K. situated?
3. What kind of Republic is the UK?
4. Are Northern England Mountains very high, what is the highest mountain?
5. How many countries are in the Great Britain?

### GRAMMAR

#### THE FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE

Жалпы келер шақ

**shall, will + vI (infinitive)**

Жалпы келер шақ қайталанатын дағдылы іс-әрекеттің, қимылдың болашақта іске асатындығын білдіреді:

I shall wait for you downstairs. - Мен сізді төменде күтемін.

The president will return by the end of the week. - Президент аптаның соңына қарай қайтады.

Saltanat will have her first exam tomorrow. - Ертең Салтанаттың бірінші емтиханы болады.

Ағылшын тілінде **The Future Simple**, жалпы келер шақ І-ші жақтағы жекеше және көпше түрде **shall** көмекші етістігінен, ал басқа жақтар үшін **will** көмекші етістігі мен негізгі тұйық етістігінен, to демеулігінсіз жасалады:

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I shall come We shall come	I shall not come We shall not come	Shall I come? Shall we come?
You will come He will come She will come They will come	You will not come He will not come She will not come They will not come	Will you come? Will he come? Will she come? Will they come?

I	} shall come	Мен келемін
We		Біз келеміз
You	will come	Сіз келесіз
He	} will come	Ол келеді
She		
It		
They	will come	Олар келеді

Қысқарған түрі: **Shall / will = `ll**

**The Future Simple шағының қолданылуы**

Етістіктің бұл шағы ағылшын тілінде мына жағдайларда қолданылады:

а) жақын арада болатын, қайталанатын немесе бір-ақ рет болатын іс-әрекетті көрсеткенде:

They will have English lessons twice a week. - Ағылшын тілі сабағы оларда аптасына екі рет болмақ.

б) Әдетте жалпы келер шақ.

**tomorrow** - ертең

**tonight** - бүгін түнде

**next week (year)** - келесі аптада (жылы)

**the day after tomorrow** - бүгінгі күннен кейін

**one of these days** - жақын күндердің бірінде

**soon** - жақында

**in a week** - бір атадан кейін

**next week (month)** - келесі аптада (айда) т.б. мезгіл пысықтауыштармен қолданылады.

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
She will come to see us next week. - Ол бізге келесі аптада келеді.

## Writing

### Exercises

#### I. Put in (shall, will).

1. He ... forget to come to the party if you don't phone him.
2. I... be with you in a week.
3. We ... leave home in the morning.
4. If you try hard , you ... soon learn English.
5. If it rains , we ... get wet.
6. When I come I ... take a rest .
7. My friend ... leave Astana on Saturday.
8. They ... ask Omar to come for the holidays.
9. Do you think they ... like these records?

#### II . Give negative and interrogative forms and translate the sentences.

1. We shall get up very early tomorrow.
2. I shall go to the cinema tomorrow.
3. He will go to country on business next week.
4. Asel will bring a record-player in the evening.
5. We shall listen to the new records.
6. What will you do tomorrow? I shall go to the theatre tomorrow.

#### III . Add tail-questions to these sentences according to the models.

**Models:** *You are going to leave Astana, aren't you?*

*You have many friends, haven't you ?*

1. Maira does not study well, ...?
2. You made a report yesterday, ...?
3. You will come to see us, ...?
4. Erlan is going to see this film, ...?
5. You know that everything will be all right, ... ?
6. There was no mistake about it, ... ?
7. You always keep your word, ... ?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

8. You don't want to see Nurlan, ... ?
9. My mother didn't go to the cinema yesterday, ... ?
10. You will help us, ... ?
11. Ainur has much work to do now, ... ?

**IV. Translate into Kazakh.**

1. I shall not take a mutton chop.
2. He will not go to France.
3. I shan't take an umbrella because I am in a hurry.
4. She won't take a fried chicken because she doesn't like it.
5. My wife won't lay the table because she is ill.

**V. Fill in the blanks with the Future Simple.**

1. In summer we ... (go) to the country.
2. She ... (make) the dinner herself.
3. The waiter ... (bring) the menu right now.
4. I think the waitress ... (bring) the bill right now.
5. Next Saturday we ... (dine) in some good.
6. Next week I ... (make) the cake for my daughter's birthday.
7. Next time you ... (have) some porridge for breakfast.

**VI. Answer the following questions.**

1. Will you come and see me when you have time?
2. Will you stay indoors if it is wet on Sunday?
3. When will you come home tomorrow?
4. Will you buy new records?
5. Where will you go on Sunday?
6. What will you do if the weather is fine ?
7. Will they go to the cinema this week?

**VII. Give negative and interrogative forms and translate the sentences.**

1. The teacher will give you a good mark for the dictation.
2. I shall phone you in the evening.
3. He will come home at 7 o'clock.
4. She will soon be here.
5. My friend will send me some books.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
6. If I find his number, I'll phone him . 7. We shall have a party next week .

### **VIII . Fill in blanks with articles wherever necessary and translate the sentences.**

One day ... Frenchman who was travelling in ... Sweden came to ... restaurant. ... Frenchman did not know ... Swedish and nobody could speak ... French at ... restaurant . He wanted some mushrooms for his breakfast, so he called ... waiter and asked him to bring some mushrooms. But ... waiter could not understand what ... Frenchman wanted. Then ... Frenchman took ... piece of paper and ... pencil and drew ... picture of ... mushroom. ... waiter looked at ... picture and left ... room at once. Five minutes later he returned with ... umbrella.

### **IX . Translate into English.**

1. Астанаға қашан барасыз?
2. Ертең сен не істейсің?
3. Мен сабақтан кейін досыммен кездесемін.
4. Ол университетке автобуспен келеді.
5. Жақында бізде жаңа стадион болады.
6. Мен бұл мақаланы екі күннен кейін аударамын.
7. Мен университет біткен соң орта мектептің мұғалімі боламын.
8. Мен ауылға жазғы демалыста барамын.
9. Менің інім жақында мектепті бітіреді.
10. Ол жоғарғы оқу орнына түсу үшін мемлекеттік тест тапсырады.

### **X . Put in will ('ll) or won't.**

*Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.*

1. "Are you ready yet?" "Not yet. I ... be ready in five minutes."
2. I'm going away for a few days. I'm living tonight, so I ... be at home tomorrow.
3. It ... rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
4. A: I don't feel very well this evening.
5. B: Well , go to bed early and you ... feel better in the morning.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

6. It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He ... be 25. 7. I'm sorry I was late this morning. It ...happen again.

### **Lesson 6** **Reading**

#### **London**

London is the capital of Great Britain or the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. It is an old city, its history counts more than two thousand years. London is both the capital of the country and a huge port. London is situated upon both banks of the Thames, about forty miles from the mouth and is divided into two parts by the river: north and south. There are 17 bridges that cross the river. The population of London is more than 9 million people. The history of London goes back to Roman times. Due to favourable geographical position, soon after the Roman conquest, a small town became an important trade centre. Actually, London can be divided into several parts: the City or Downtown of London, Westminster, the West End and the East End. The City is the oldest part of London with narrow streets and pavements. There are many offices, companies and banks in this part of London. The City of London is the financial centre of the United Kingdom. Only a few thousand people live there, but in the day-time it is full of people: as about half a million people come to work there. The biggest Banks and offices are concentrated in the City. The West End is the centre of London. It is full of richest hotels, largest supermarkets, best cinemas and concert halls. There are a lot of beautiful houses and gardens. Only well-to-do people can live there. Another important district of London is Westminster, where most of Government buildings are situated. Westminster Palace is the seat of the British Parliament. Westminster Palace was founded in 1050. It is situated in the centre of London. Many great Englishmen were buried in the Abbey: Newton, Darwin and others. The Towers of the Houses of Parliament stand high above the city. On the highest tower there is the largest clock in the country which is known to the whole world as Big Ben. One can hear Big Ben

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

strike every quarter of an hour. The clock «Big Ben» came into service in 1859. Big Ben is the biggest clock bell in Britain. The official London residence of the Queen is Buckingham Palace. It was built in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. There are many nice squares in London. Trafalgar Square is one of them and it is in the centre of the West End. One can see a statue of Lord Nelson in the middle of this square. There are many museums, libraries and galleries in London. The Tate Gallery is one of the well-known galleries in London. Henry Tate was a sugar manufacturer. He was fond of paintings and collected many pictures. The British Museum is a very interesting place in London. It was founded in 1753. The library of this museum has lots of books.

The East End of London is the industrial area and the place where the working people live. There are many factories, workshops and docks there. The East End, lying eastwards from the City is very large and crowded. There are many cars and buses in London. There is the Tube (an underground) in London too. The underground, constructed in London, was the first underground in the World.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. to count - санау
2. huge - керемет үлкен
3. bank - өзен жағалауы
4. mouth - сағасы
5. due to - нәтижесінде
6. favourable - қолайлы, жағымды
7. downtown - қаланың шоғырланған жері
8. narrow - тар, жіңішке
9. pavement – жаяу жүргіншінің жолы
10. well-to-do people - ауқатты адамдар
11. to be buried - жерленген
12. to strike - ұру, соғу
13. crowded - тығыз шоғырланған
14. the Tube - «труба» метрополитен



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### **Answer the questions:**

1. Is London a young city?
2. Where is London situated?
3. How many bridges cross the river Thames?
4. What is the oldest part of London?
5. What is situated in the West End?
6. Can poor people afford to live in the West End?
7. Where are most of Government buildings situated?
8. Where is the largest clock in the country located?
9. How often does Big Ben strike?
10. When did the clock «Big Ben» come into service?
11. What square is in the centre of the West End situated?
12. When was the British Museum founded?
13. How is the area where most working people live called?
14. How is London underground called?

### **London's Place of interest**

London is not only the political, economic and cultural centre of the United Kingdom. It is the main tourist attraction of the country. There are a lot of places of interest in London which attract thousands of tourists every year. They usually want to see Westminster Abbey, the Houses of Parliament, Buckingham Palace, St. Paul's Cathedral, the Tower of London.

Westminster is now the political centre of London. In the 11th century King Edward the Confessor decided to build a great abbey church there. There are many royal tombs in the Abbey, like the tomb of Edward the confessor himself, and memorials to famous men and women. The most popular ones are those writers, poets and musicians in the Poet's Corner. William the Conqueror was crowned there, and since then all the coronations have taken place in the Abbey. The present Houses of Parliament were built after the fire in the Palace of Westminster in 1834, where the Parliament met since the 16th till the 19th century. There are two houses in the Parliament: the House of Lords and the House of Commons. St. Stephen's tower of the Houses of Parliament contains the famous Big Ben.

Buckingham Palace is the Queen's official London residence.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

Londoners usually watch the Changing of the Guards in the forecourt of the palace. It lasts about 30 minutes. St. Paul's Cathedral is Sir Christopher Wren's masterpiece. It is crowned with a huge dome. Inside the dome there is the famous Whispering Gallery. There are many memorials in the Cathedral, including memorials to Wellington and Nelson. The Tower of London used to be a fortress a palace, a prison, a mint. It is famous for its prisoners, like Sir Thomas More and Guy Fawkes. The White Tower was built by William the Conqueror to protect the city and is guarded by "Beefeaters", the Yeomen Guards. London is noted for its museums and art galleries. Among them are the National Gallery, the National Portrait Gallery, the Tate Gallery, the Museum of London, the Museum of Moving Image, Madame Tussaud's Museum and many other abbey churches .

### **Vocabulary:**

1. abbey - аббатство
2. church – шіркеу
3. royal tombs - корольдің қабірі
4. confessor - сыр тыңдаушы
5. huge - үлкен, зор
6. dome – күмбез
7. mint - ақша шығаратын жер

### **Answer the questions:**

1. What places of interest do you know in London?
2. Where was the King Edward buried?
3. What city is the capital of Great Britain?
4. Who is the first king who was crowned in Westminster Abbey?
5. How many Houses are in the British Parliament?
6. What is the other name of the Parliament House?
7. In what tower of the Houses does Big Ben contain?
8. What is the official Residence of Queen?
9. Whose masterpiece is St. Pauls's Cathedral?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

1. Choose the right variant  
There are many farmlands in  
Britain, especially in the ...  
of the country.  
a) south  
b) Midland plain  
c) north  
d) east  
e) west
2. I met my ... friend  
yesterday  
a) goodest  
b) better  
c) gooder  
d) the best  
e) best
3. At this time tomorrow I...  
to university  
a) will be driving  
b) drive  
c) will drive  
d) drives  
e) was driving
4. How do you say the title :  
Elizabeth II.  
a) Elizabeth 2  
b) Two Elizabeth  
c) The second Elizabeth  
d) Elizabeth the second  
e) The two Elizabeth

**TEST**

5. January is the ... month  
of the year.  
a) second  
b) one of  
c) first  
d) third
6. When was founded  
Westminster Palace?  
a) ten and fifty  
b) twenty and eleven  
c) eleven and forty  
d) sixteen and fifty  
e) ten and thirty
7. Complete the sentence  
Where are the most of  
government buildings  
situated?  
a) Westminster  
b) West City  
c) City  
d) East End  
e) Oxford Street
8. Choose the right variant  
The British Prime Minister  
lives at ... .  
a) 7 Russell Street  
b) 10 Downing Street  
c) Westminster Abbey  
d) 12 Whitehall  
e) 15 Oxford Street

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. According to the English saying “ The Englishman’s home is his ...”

- a) mansion
- b) penthouse
- c) love
- d) stable
- e) castle

10. Choose the right variant

The British celebrate Christmas Day on ... .

- a) 30<sup>th</sup> of December
- b) 26<sup>th</sup> of December
- c) 7<sup>th</sup> of January
- d) 25<sup>th</sup> of December
- e) 24<sup>th</sup> of December

11. Make the right choice

The Union Jack is ...

- a) the flag of the UK
- b) the flag of Scotland
- c) the flag of Wales
- d) the flag of England
- e) the flag of the Irish

12. Make the right choice  
10. The National Gallery is in ...

- a) Piccadilly Circus
- b) Parliament Square
- c) Trafalgar Square
- d) Leicester Square
- e) Queen Square

13. Make the right choice

I (write) a postcard to my friend tomorrow.

- a) shall write
- b) will write
- c) write
- d) written
- e) wrote

14. Make the right choice

The head of State in Britain is ...

- a) the Prime Minister
- b) the President
- c) the Queen
- d) the Speaker
- e) the Parliament

15. Make the right choice

Great Britain is separated from the continent by ...

- a) the Pacific Ocean
- b) the Irish Sea
- c) the Bristol Channel
- d) the English Channel
- e) the Dublin Channel

## **Lesson 7**

### **Reading**

#### **England**

England is situated in the east part of the Great Britain. St. George, the patron saint of England. The capital is London, a rose is the symbol of the country. England is the largest, the most industrial and most densely populated part of the United Kingdom. Over 46 million people out of the population of the UK live in England. The greatest concentrations of population are in London, Birmingham and northwest industrial cities. The costs of England are washed by the North Sea, the Irish Sea and the English Channel. The channel which is separated Great Britain from the continent. The Strait of Dover is the narrowest part of the English Channel. No part of England is more than 120 km from the sea. The sea also has a great effect of England's climate. There are many rivers in England. The longest is the Severn (338 km ), the most important is the Thames ( 354 km ). England is mostly a lowland country. There are upland regions in the north and the southwest but the rest of England is almost flat. The wool industry is cent red in Leeds and Bradford, the cotton industry in Manchester, the iron are goes to the steel, heavy machinery and shipbuilding industries of Newcastle and other cities. The industries of Midland with Birmingham as its chief produce metal goods, from motor car and railway engines to pins and buttons. The Midland plain makes farming land. In South England between Highlands lie Lowlands. In this part of England some of the oldest British settlements and traces of ancient monuments such as Stonehenge are found. London is the chief city of South England.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. chief - басты, негізгі
2. settlement - елді жер
3. trace - азғантай мөлшерде
4. ancient - ежелгі
5. flat - терік

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

## Answer the questions:

1. What is the emblem of England?
2. What is the capital of England?
3. How many people live in England?
4. By what seas are England washed?
5. What sea is separate the Great Britain from the continent?
6. What is the narrowest part of the English Channel?
7. What is the longest river and the most important river in England?
8. Where are the monuments as Stonehenge found?

## GRAMMAR

### THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

Аяқталған осы шақ

#### to have (have, has) +vIII (Participle II)

Бұл шақ іс-әрекеттің белгілі бір уақытқа дейінгі осы, өткен, келер шақтағы нәтижелі, тиянақты орындалуын білдіреді.

Етістіктің бұл шағы іс-әрекеттің бұрын басталып, осы кезде іске асқандығын, орындалғанын, бірақ оның нәтижесімен байланысты болуын білдіреді.

They have already discussed the terms of shipment. - Олар жүк тиеу шартын әлдеқашан талқылап бітті.

I have just seen the new performance. - Мен қазір ғана жаңа қойылымды көріп шықтым.

Affirmative	Negative	Interrogative
I have come	I have not come	Have I come?
You have come	You have not come	Have You come?
He has come	He has not come	Has he come?
She has come	She has not come	Has she come?
It has come	It has not come	Has it come?
We have come	We have not come	Have we come?
They have come	They have not come	Have they come?

#### The Present Perfect шағының қолданылуы:

1. Етістіктің бұл шағы бұрын басталған істің, жай-күйдің сөйлеушінің сөйлеп тұрған кезіне дейін созылғанын, болып

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
жатқандығын аяқталмаған істің көрсетілгендігін білдіріп for  
- дан бері, since - содан бері сөздері қолдануы арқылы  
жасалады: I have been a teacher for 20 years. - Мен 20 жылдан  
бері мұғалім болып істеймін.

We have known the Jonsons for 50 years. Біз Джонсондар  
отбасын 50 жылдан бері білеміз.

2. Етістіктің бұл шағы бұрынғы кезден, осы уақытқа дейінгі  
іс-қимылды көрсету үшін созылыңқы шақтарда  
қолданылмайтын to hear, to see, to forget т.б. етістіктерімен  
қолданылады:

He has heard about his arrival in London. - Ол оның Лондонға  
келгенін естиді.

I haven't seen my family for 3 days. - Мен отбасымды  
көрмегеніме 3 күн болды.

3. Етістіктің бұл шағы мына мезгіл үстеулермен  
қолданылады:

**already** - әлдеқашан

**never** – ешқашан (болымсыз сөйлемде)

**ever** - қашан болса да (сұраулы сөйлемде)

**often** - жиі

**seldom** - сирек

**always** - әрқашан

**hardly ever** - ешқашан

**just** - қазір ғана

**yet** –әлі (болымсыз сөйлемде)

**lately** - кейінгі кезде, соңғы уақытта, жақында

Бұлар негізгі етістіктердің алдында, ал кейде сөйлемнің  
соңында келеді.

We have just come in. - Біз қазір ғана кірдік.

He has not finished reading yet. - Ол әлі оқып біткен жоқ.

Yet - болымсыз сөйлемдерде, ал *ever* сұраулы  
сөйлемдерде қолданылады.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I. a) Write you have seen.**

*A castle, a king, a dragon, a superman, a robot, a pyramid, a kangaroo*

Example: *I have seen a castle but I have never seen a king.*

**b) Write about the thing you have done.**

Example: *I have just washed the dishes.*

I have already -----.

I have -----.

She has -----.

**II . Answer the following questions.**

1. How long have you lived in this town?
2. Have you ever been to the Crimea?
3. Have you sent a letter to your friend?
4. Have you heard the latest news?
5. What film has she seen this week?
6. Has your brother bought any new records since spring?
7. How long has your friend been to London?
8. Have you read many books this year?
9. Has your father ever seen all the pictures in this museum?
10. Where have you been all this time?
11. Have you learned the Present Perfect Tense?

**III . Fill in the blanks with the correct tense of the verbs given in brackets.**

1. I ... never ... this book (to read).
2. My brother ... this book last summer (to read).
3. He ... his report at last (to finish).
4. Mary ... Karagandy many times (to visit).
5. Arman ... as he was crossing the street (to fall down).
6. When the bell rang, Dan ... from his seat and ... out of the room (to jump, to run).
7. The day before yesterday we ... a bad storm (to have).
8. The rain ... but a cold wind is still blowing (to stop).



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
9. I ... this exercise over and over, still I don't understand it (to study).

10. Zhanat ...not ... his parents since autumn(to see).

### **IV. Fill in the blanks with the definite or indefinite articles wherever necessary.**

Three young men had ... holiday in New York and were staying at ... forty-five floor hotel. They went to ... theatre and returned to ... hotel at late hour . ... night clerk greeted them with ... sad news; "... lifts do not work ". "So we shall walk upstairs.", said one of them. Then he turned to his friends and said: "It is not easy to walk up to ... forty-fifth floor. In order to make ... time fly, I shall tell you some jokes; then you, Andy, will sing us ... some songs; and you, Peter, will tell us ... sad story. So they began to walk up to ... room. Tom told ... jokes, Andy sang songs. Soon they reached ... thirtieth floor. "Now, Peter, it is your turn to tell us ... sad story. " said Tom. And Peter said: "I shall tell you ... very sad story. We left ... key to our room in ... hall downstairs."

### **V. Fill in the blanks with the correct tense of the verbs given in brackets.**

1. I ...the letter before you came (to write).

2. ... you ... any stories by M. Auesov (to read)?

3. When you ..., I ... my morning exercises (to get up , to do).

4. The doctor ... just here (to be).

5. What ... the matter with you (to be)?

6. You ... not ... about him (to worry). He is quite well.

7. The work ... by the time you come tomorrow (to be done).

### **VI. Give the principal forms of the following verbs.**

to break, to come, to fight, to make, to meet, to do, to fall, to think, to tell, to see, to give, to say, to stand, to feel, to take, to keep.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**VII . Write the sentences in the Past Simple tense and translate the sentences.**

1. I have not seen you since spring.
2. Where have you been all this time?
3. I have been to the Crimea this summer.
4. Have you been to the Caucasus? Yes, I have.
5. I was there two years ago.
6. We have already translated this text.
7. During the year we have thought of many things.
8. I have just seen him.

**VIII . Fill in the blanks with adverbs or prepositions wherever necessary (*out, up, about, to, into, by, for, with, at, on, down, up, of, to*).**

1. When I came ... the room, I saw my friend there.
2. If you are ill, you must go ... bed.
3. The doctor left the instructions ... taking medicines..
4. Wake me ... .. 6 o'clock tomorrow, please.
5. Don't worry ... it.
6. Everything will be all right ... him.
7. As I was tired I went ... a walk.
8. I came ... my mother I saw that she looked unusually pale.
9. I sat ... and began reading. ... this thermometer thirty –seven is normal.
10. Asem likes to go ... car.
11. This is no importance ... me.

**IX . Fill in the blanks with articles or pronouns wherever necessary.**

***The hidden treasure***

... old peasant called his three sons and said to them: "... dear children, soon I shall die and I have nothing to leave you, except ... cottage and garden. But in the garden there is hidden treasure. Dig for it, and you will find it". After ... father's death, ... three sons dug in ... garden for many days, but they found no ... gold or ... silver . ... ground had never been so well worked before, and that year the trees bore ... large number of ... fruit. Then

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
three sons understood what ... treasure was , of which ... had spoken. He was ... clever man and knew that in ... work they would find ... best treasure.

### **X . Answer the following questions.**

1. When do you get up?
2. Do you do your morning exercises?
3. How much time does it take you to do your morning exercises, to wash and to dress?
4. When do you leave home?
5. How do you get to your university?
6. Do you prefer to go by bus or to walk?
7. How much time does it take you to get to your university?
8. How many lessons have you every day?
9. When are your lessons over?
10. When do you come home?
11. What do you do at home?
12. Where do you go in the evening?
13. How do you spend your free time?
14. At what time do you go to bed?

## **Lesson 8**

### **Reading**

#### **Northern Ireland**

Northern Ireland is the smallest component of the United Kingdom. It occupies northeast of the island of Ireland, only one-sixth of its territory. Its symbol is a shamrock and a red hand . St. Patrick is the saint of Northern Ireland. Northern Ireland contains six of the nine countries of the historic province of Ulster and that is why the name “Ulster” is sometimes used as the equivalent to Northern Ireland. Its capital city is Belfast. The population of Northern Ireland is about 1,5 million people. Belfast is one of the youngest capital cities in the world and it has grown incredibly fast. The city is well-known for shipbuilding. It was here that the “Titanic” was built and sent out on her fatal

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
maiden voyage. Tourists can visit an Art Gallery, step into Belfast Cathedral or go souvenir hunting for the Irish linen, pottery and hand-cut glass in Belfast's covered arcades. If the sun is shining they can drive out to Torment, the former Parliament building and walk through the parkland. In the evening tourists can go to the theatre, the Grand Opera House or a concert at the Ulster Hall-home of the Ulster.

The Irish population is divided into two groups: the Protestants and the Catholics. The Protestants are of British origin. They are descendants of British settlers who came to Ireland in the XVI th and XVII th centuries, during and after the Reformation. The Catholics are mostly natives of Ireland. The Protestants were the majority and dominated the Catholics with strong discrimination. In 1968 the Catholics began the movement for equal civil rights. The fighting between the two groups of the population continues to this day. Northern Ireland has a strong cultural tradition: songs, dances, literature and festivals. It has its own Art Council, and there are orchestras, theatres, ballet and opera companies.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. population - халқы
2. origin - тегі, шыққан жері
3. descendant - ұрпақ
4. settler - қоныстанушы
5. discrimination - дискриминация
6. civil rights - азаматтық құқық

### **Answer the questions:**

1. How many countries are there in the Republic of Ireland?
2. What is the capital of Northern Ireland?
3. Into what parts is the Irish population divided?
4. Who are the Catholics?
5. Who are the Protestants?
6. Has the Catholics-Protestants problem been solved?
7. Does Northern Ireland have strong cultural traditions?
8. What is the nickname of Northern Ireland?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**TEST**

1. Choose the right variant.  
Look at this bird-house.  
Mika (to make) it  
herself.
  - a) make
  - b) made
  - c) be made
  - d) have made
  - e) has made
2. We (not to see) him  
since 1987.
  - a) see
  - b) saw
  - c) have not seen
  - d) has not seen
  - e) sees
3. She (to live) here since  
1970
  - a) live
  - b) lived
  - c) have lived
  - d) has lived
  - e) to live
4. Oh, close the window!  
Look, all my papers (to  
fall) on the floor because  
of the wind.
  - a) fall
  - b) has fallen
  - c) have fallen
  - d) fell
  - e) to fell
5. When you (to open) the  
window? –I (to open) it ten  
minutes ago.
  - a) open / opens
  - b) opened / to open
  - c) have opened /has opened
  - d) has opened / be opened
  - e) have opened / have  
opened
6. Is Tom at home? –No,  
he (to go) to the  
stadium.
  - a) go
  - b) goes
  - c) went
  - d) has gone
  - e) have gone
7. Look! Our neighbours  
(to buy) a new car.
  - a) buy
  - b) has bought
  - c) have bought
  - d) buys
  - e) to buy
8. ... you ever (to be) to  
England before?
  - a) has ... been
  - b) been
  - c) was
  - d) have ... been
  - e) do ... been

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. He ... never (to fly) on  
an airplane.

- a) has flown
- b) have flown
- c) flew
- d) fly
- e) flies

10. My grandmother (to  
have) this umbrella for 10  
years.

- a) have
- b) had
- c) has had
- d) have had
- e) having

11. We (to be) friends since  
school.

- a) were
- b) was
- c) been
- d) has been
- e) have been

12. My brother wrote several  
plays. He just (to finish)  
his second tragedy.

- a) has finished
- b) have finished
- c) finished
- d) finish
- e) finishing

13. I (not to see) him for  
three years. I wonder where  
he is.

- a) has not seen
- b) saw
- c) have not seen
- d) to see
- e) seeing

14. You (to lock) the door  
before you left the house?

- a) lock
- b) have locked
- c) locked
- d) has locked
- e) to lock

15. I can't go out because I  
(not to finish) my work.

- a) has not finished
- b) finish
- c) have not finished
- d) finished
- e) am not finishing

## **Lesson 9**

### **Reading**

#### **Wales**

Wales is the country in the United Kingdom to the west of the country. The population of Wales about two and a quarter million. Its symbol is a daffodil and a leek. Its patron is St. David. On the 1<sup>st</sup> of March, St David's Day, patriotic Welsh people wear a leek and a daffodil both symbols of Wales. Wales is the highland country of old, hard rock. North Wales is a country of mountains and deep valleys. South Wales is a land of high hills and wide valleys. Snowdon is the second highest mountain in Britain it is 1085 metres high..

The capital of Wales is Cardiff – the largest city of Wales. Cardiff is situated near the Tang River. It is an important industrial city and an administrative and educational centre.

Wales is speaking one of the Celtic languages, like Scottish and Irish. The Welsh language Act of 1987 said that all official documents should be in both languages, and most road signs are printed in English and Welsh. Rugby is a national game of Wales, and during the 1970s the Welsh team was thought to be the best in the world. The rules of the game are quite difficult. A team consists of fifteen players. The game is played with an egg-shaped ball.

Cardiff has been the official capital of Wales since 1955. As a tourist, you might want to visit the castle and Handoff cathedral, or the National Museum of Wales. If you like music, there is a famous national concert hall, St. David's Hall, or the New Theatre, which is the home of the Welsh National Opera Company. Wales people is fond of music and national songs. Every year, an international festival called Eisteddford is held in the town of Langollen. People come from over the world to recite poetry, sing and dance in this colourful competition.

Since 1536 Wales has been governed by England. There is a Welsh National party which wants independence from the United Kingdom and the Welsh language is still used in certain parts of the country. In the 60s Welsh was given equal status with English

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
as an official language and is used in the law courts. It is taught in school and some TV program are broadcast in Welsh. However, only about 20% of the population speaks Welsh.

### Vocabulary:

1. chiefly - негізгі
2. coal-mining - көмір өндіру
3. sense - сезім
4. independence - тәуелсіздік
5. setrain - белгілі
6. equal - тең, бірдей
8. broadcast - хабар

### Answer the questions:

1. Where is Wales situated?
2. What is the capital of Wales?
3. What is the emblem of Wales?
- 3 Has it always been governed by England?
4. What language is used in the country?
5. How many per cent of the population speak inWelsh?
6. What is the musical festival called?

## GRAMMAR

### PAST PERFECT TENSE

Аяқталған өткен шақ

#### had +vIII (Participle II)

Past Perfect Tense іс-әрекет, қимылдың бір уақытта нәтижелі аяқталғанын немесе басқа бір іс-әрекеттің алдында болғанын білдіреді. She had written her essay, when it started to snow.

Past Perfect Tense **to have** көмекші етістігінің өткен шақ формасы (had) және негізгі етістіктің өткен шақ есімше (Past Participle) формасы арқылы жасалады.



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**had + Participle II**

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Negative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>
I had come	I had not come	Had I come?
You had come	You had not come	Had You come?
He had come	He had not come	Had he come?
She had come	She had not come	Had she come?
It had come	It had not come	Had it come?
We had come	We had not come	Had we come?
They had come	They had not come	Had they come?

Past Perfect-те іс-әрекеттің өткендегі белгілі бір уақытта орындалғанын білдіру үшін мезгіл пысықтауыштың алдында *by* көмекші сөзі арқылы мынадай үстеулер қолданылады: **by 7 o'clock (сағат 7-ге дейін), by Friday (жұмаға дейін), by that time (сол уақытқа дейін), by the end of the week (аптаның аяғына дейін), before (дейін), т.б.** I had cooked my cake before she returned.

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I. Translate into Kazakh.**

1. We had already built this plant by the end of 1997.
2. I had already written my exercise by half past six.
3. By nine o'clock he had already left.
4. I had written my exercise before he came.
5. They had returned home long before I rang them up.

**II. Put down the verbs in the Past Simple or Past Perfect.**

1. He (to study) better than his father (to do).
2. They (to spend) their vacation last year at the same village where they (to live) many years before.
3. When we (to come) she already (to send) the children away and (to be free) to speak to us.
4. Yesterday I (to buy) a new watch as I (to lose) my old one.
5. He (to take) the boy to the door by which he himself (to enter) the room.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

6. He (to open) his eyes, then (to look) around and (think) for some time, trying to remember what (to happen) to him.
7. After they (to travel) in the Caucasus they (to decide) to make a sea voyage.
8. After they (to go) at last I (to go) to bed.
9. He could go to the seaside in June because he (to pass) all his examination.
10. He (to eat) all the cakes after we (to tell) him not to do it.
11. The day after the party he (to ask) why we (to leave) so early.

### **III . Open the brackets using the verbs in the correct tense.**

1. I just (to see) Jack.
2. She (to wash) the dishes from 5 till 6.
3. Look! She (to draw) a very nice picture.
4. At this time yesterday I (to talk) to my friend.
5. The TV program (to begin) before I (to come) home.
6. I (not to eat) ice-cream since summer.
7. I understood that she (not to read) my letter.
8. She (to do) the rooms when I (to come) home.
9. It's all right: she (to find) the way out of the situation.
10. He (to come) home late yesterday.

### **IV. Open the brackets using the verbs in the correct tense.**

1. We (to go) to school every day.
2. Nick (to do) his homework by 7 o'clock yesterday.
3. You (to help) your father tomorrow?
4. We (to bring) a lot of berries from the wood. Now we shall make jam.
5. Look! Jane (to swim) across the river.
6. What you (to do) at 6 o'clock yesterday?
7. You ever (to see) the Pyramids?
8. I (to go) to the Caucasus two years ago.
9. When Nick (to come) home yesterday, his mother (to return) and (to cook) dinner in the kitchen.
10. When I (to go) to school yesterday, I suddenly (to remember) that I (to forget) to take my English exercise-book.
11. Yesterday grandfather (to tell) us how he (to work) at the factory during the war.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**V. Open the brackets using the verbs in the correct tense .**

1. I always (to come) to school at a quarter to nine.
2. Yesterday I (to come) to school at ten minutes to nine.
3. Tomorrow Nick (not to go) to the cinema because he (to go) to the cinema yesterday.
4. He already (to be) to the cinema this week.
5. Look! He (to cry).
6. What your brother (to do) now?
7. My friend (to like) pies. He (to eat) pies every day.
8. When I (to meet) him in the street yesterday, he (to eat) a pie.
9. He (to tell) me that he (to buy) that pie at the corner of the street.
10. Look at my friend now! He (to eat) a pie again.

**VI . Open the brackets using the correct verbs .**

1. When he (to come) home, his mother already (to cook) dinner.
2. When we (to come) to my friend's house, he just (to leave).
3. When her husband (to enter) her office, she already (to finish) her work for that day.
4. Jennifer (to send) him an email after he (to call).
5. Andy (to ask) his friend before he (to propose) him his help.
6. We (to eat) a cake which I (to bring) an hour before.
7. My sister (to take) my dress which I (to buy) in Morocco.
8. I (to work) on the computer yesterday which I (to buy) a week ago.
9. I (to know) that my friend (not yet to complete) the test in the university.
10. Nick and his wife (to come) home from the theatre at five o'clock.

**VII . Open the brackets using the correct verbs .**

1. Nick and his wife (to come) home from the theatre by five o'clock.
2. She (to finish) her homework at seven o'clock yesterday.
3. He (to finish) his homework by seven o'clock.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

4. They (to sell) their house before they (to buy) the new one.
5. He told me that he (to buy) a new car.
6. Yesterday I (to wake up), (to open) my eyes and (to remember) . what I (to do) the day before.
7. She said that she (to have) a great vacation trip.
8. You (to complete) the test by Friday?
9. I (not to have) a lunch by the afternoon, so I was very hungry.
10. I (to fix) my car before my daughter (to return) back from school.

### **VIII . Put the verbs in the Past Simple and Past Perfect.**

Ex.: When I (to come) home, mother already (to cook) dinner.

*When I came home, mother had already cooked dinner.*

1. When father (to return) from work, we already (to do) our homework.
2. When the teacher (to enter) the classroom, the pupils already (to open) their books.
3. Kate (to give) me the book which she (to buy) the day before.
4. Nick (to show) the teacher the picture which he (to draw).
5. The boy (to give) the goats the grass which he (to bring) from the field.
6. Mother (to see) that Nick (not to wash) his hands.
7. The teacher (to understand) that Lena (not to do) her homework.
8. When we (to come) to the station, the train already (to leave).
9. Tom (to return) from the cinema at five o'clock.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### **IX . Put the verbs in the Past Simple and Past Perfect.**

1. Tom (to return) from the cinema by five o'clock.
2. I (to finish) my homework at seven o'clock.
3. I (to finish) my homework by seven o'clock.
4. He (to think) that he (to lose) the money.
5. Ann (to tell) me that she (to see) an interesting film.
6. When I (to wake) up yesterday, father already (to go) to work.
7. Nick (to think) that his father (not yet to come) home.
8. Mary (to tell) us that she (to cook) a good dinner.
9. Yesterday I (to find) the book which I (to lose) in summer.

### **X . Open the brackets using the verb in the Past Perfect.**

1. She hoped I (to pay) for the tickets.
2. When we came the plane (to take off).
3. I went to sleep as soon as the show (to finish).
4. By the end of the year he (to complete) five courses.
5. When they came home mother (to do) everything about the house.
6. I went to see the sights after I (to buy) a map of Moscow.
7. After I (to spend) all the money I turned to my father.
8. She understood the letter after she (to read) it a second time.
9. We (to keep) waiting until we lost patience.

## **Lesson 10**

### **Reading**

#### **Scotland**

Scotland is a country in the north of Great Britain. It is a part of the United Kingdom. Its symbol is a thistle, its patron is St. Andrew. Scotland is divided into three natural regions: the Southern Uplands, the Central Lowlands and the Highlands. A lot of places in Scotland are a natural paradise, still untouched by man. The capital of Scotland is Edinburgh, well known for its castle. Glasgow is the industrial capital of Scotland. It is the third largest city in Great Britain. The typical products of Scotland are timber, whisky, salmon. Golf is the Scottish natural sport and it seems to have originated in this country.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
Scotland is also the land of myths and mysteries; every castle has its ghost. Glamis Castle is said to have nine of them. And of course everyone knows about the lake Loch Ness and the Monster "Nessie". "Nessie" is said that it was about six meters long, with a long, thin neck. The first report of the monster in Loch Ness was in 565 A.D. Since 1934 thousands of people claimed that they had seen the monster. Scientists have investigated the Loch and taken pictures but no scientific explanation of the mystery has been given.

### Vocabulary:

1. paradise - жұмақ
2. untouched - қол тимеген
3. castle - қорған
4. myth - аңыз
6. ghost - жын, шайтан
7. to claime - сендіру
8. mystery - жұмбақ
9. timber – орман ағашы

### Answer the questions:

1. Where is Scotland situated?
2. How many regions are there in Scotland?
3. What is the capital of Scotland?
4. What is the industrial capital of Scotland?
5. What are typical products of Scotland?
6. What are Scottish castles famous for?
7. What is Loch Ness's Monster called?

### Writing

### TEST

1. Choose the right variant.  
Where is your luggage? — I  
(to leave) it at the station.  
a) have left  
b) left  
c) had left

2. The train (to arrive) at 5  
o'clock tomorrow.  
a) will arrive  
b) arrive  
c) arrives

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

3. If I ( to have) time, I'll go with you  
a) will have  
b) has  
c) have
4. Mike (to write) a letter at the moment  
a) writes  
b) wrote  
c) is writing
5. I (to live) in London 5 years ago  
a) had lived  
b) has lived  
c) lived
6. My mother (to watch) TV at 5 o'clock yesterday  
a) watched  
b) was watching  
c) has watched
7. Mary (to do) all her homework by 5 o'clock yesterday  
a) had done  
b) has done  
c) did
8. I (not to go) to school tomorrow  
a) shall not go  
b) won't go  
c) didn't go
9. We (to play) football by 7 o'clock tomorrow  
a) shall play  
b) shall be playing  
c) had played
10. My parents (to live) together since 1972.  
a) had lived  
b) live  
c) are living
11. My best friend, Kevin, was no longer there. He (go) away.  
a) has gone  
b) have gone  
c) had gone
12. The local cinema was no longer open. It (close) down.  
a) had closed  
b) has closed  
c) have closed
13. Mr. Johnson was no longer alive. He (die).  
a) has died  
b) had died  
c) had die
14. Bill no longer had his car. He (sell) it.  
a) had sold  
b) had sell  
c) have sold

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

15. I went to see the sights  
after I (buy) a map of  
Astana.
- a) has bought
  - b) had bought
  - c) had buy

### **Lesson 11**

#### **Reading**

#### **The USA**

The United States of America is the fourth largest country in the world (after Russia, Canada, and China). It occupies the southern part of North America and stretches from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean. It also includes Alaska in the north and Hawaii in the Pacific Ocean. The total area of the country is about nine and a half million square kilometers. The USA borders on Canada in the north and on Mexico in the south. It also has a sea border with Russia. The USA is made up of 50 states and the District of Columbia where the capital of the country, Washington is situated. The population of the country is about 250 million. If we look at the map of the USA, we can see lowlands and mountains. The highest mountains are the Rocky Mountains, the Cordillera, and the Sierra Nevada. The highest peak is Mount McKinley, which is located in Alaska. America's largest rivers are the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Rio Grande, and the Columbia. The Great Lakes on the border with Canada are the largest and deepest in the USA. There are five great lakes in the northern part of the USA. There are: Huron, Michigan, Superior, Ontario and Erie. They are connected by fast rivers. There is the most famous to the whole world fall called Niagara Fall. The climate of the country varies greatly. The coldest regions are in the north. The climate of Alaska is arctic. The climate of the central part of the country is continental. The south has subtropical climate. Hot winds blowing from the Gulf of Mexico often bring typhoons. The climate along the Pacific coast is much warmer than that of the Atlantic coast.



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

The USA is a highly developed industrial country. It is the leading producer of copper and oil and the worlds second producer of iron ore and coal. On the industrial enterprises of the country they produce aircrafts, cars, textiles, radio and television sets, weapon, furniture, and paper.

Though mainly European and African in origin, the Americans are made up from nearly all races and nations, including the Chinese and the native Americans — Indians.

The largest cities are New York, Los Angeles, Chicago, Philadelphia, Detroit, San Francisco, and others. The United States is a federal republic consisting of 50 states, each of which has its own government. The seat of the central (federal) government is Washington, D. C. According to the Constitution of the USA, the powers of the government are divided into 3 branches: the executive, headed by the President, the legislative, exercised by the Congress, and the juridical. The Congress consists of the Senate and the House of Representatives. There are two main political parties in the USA: the Republican and the Democratic.

The USA is washed by the Atlantic ocean in the east and by the Pacific ocean in the west. In the north, the USA has borders on Canada and in the south on Mexico. The USA is divided into three areas: Eastern area is a highland, central area is a plain and Western area is mountains including the Rocky Mountains and the Sierra Nevada.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. square - квадрат
2. pattern - үлгі
3. survey - жоспарлау
4. reflect - түсіру
5. border - шекара
6. Huron - Гурон

### **Answer the questions:**

1. What is the capital of the USA?
2. By whom it was named?

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

3. How many states were in the USA in original?
4. The national flag of the United States of America is sometimes called the Stars and Stripes. What is the other name?
5. What is the national emblem of the USA?
6. What has eagle in its hands?
7. In what city does the statue of Liberty stand?
8. Who gave “the statue of Liberty” for present to the USA?
9. What are in the left hand and in the right hand of the statue of Liberty?
10. What is the longest river in America?
11. Who discovered the continent of America and when?
12. Who is the native Americans?
13. What is the name of the official residence of the president of the USA?
14. Where is Washington founded?
15. What is the highest building in Washington?

### **PRESIDENTS OF USA**

1. George Washington (1789 – 1797)
2. John Adams (1797 – 1801)
3. Thomas Jefferson (1801 – 1809)
4. James Madison (1809 – 1817)
5. James Monroe (1817 – 1825)
6. John Quincy Adams (1825 – 1829)
7. Andrew Jackson (1829 – 1837)
8. Martin Van Buren (1837 – 1841)
9. William Henry Harrison (March 4, 1841 – April 4, 1841)
10. John Tyler (1841 – 1845)
11. James Knox Polk (1845 – 1849)
12. Zachary Taylor (1849 – 1850)
13. Milliard Fillmore (1850 – 1853)
14. Franklin Pierce (1853 – 1857)
15. James Buchanan (1857 -1861)
16. Abraham Lincoln (1861 – 1865)

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

17. Andrew Johnson (1865 – 1869)
18. Ulysses Simpson Grant (1869 -1877)
19. Rutherford Bernhard Hayes (1877 – 1881)
20. James Abram Garfield (March 4, 1881 – September 19, 1881)
21. Chester Alan Arthur ( 1881 – 1885 )
22. (Stephen) Grover Cleveland ( 1885 – 1889 )
23. Benjamin Harrison ( 1889 – 1893 )
24. (Stephen) Grover Cleveland ( 1893 – 1897 )
25. William McKinley ( 1897 – 1901 )
26. Theodore Roosevelt ( 1901 – 1909 )
27. William Howard Taft ( 1909 – 1913 )
28. (Thomas) Woodrow Wilson ( 1913 – 1921 )
29. Warren Familial Harding (1921 – 1923 )
30. Calvin Coolidge ( 1923 – 1929 )
31. Herbert Clark Hoover (1929 – 1933 )
32. Franklin Delano Roosevelt ( 1933 – 1945 )
33. Harry S. Truman ( 1945 – 1953 )
34. Dwight David Eisenhower ( 1953 -1961 )
35. John Fitzgerald Kennedy ( 1961 – 1963 )
36. Lyndon Baines Johnson ( 1963 – 1969 )
37. Richard Milhous Nixon ( 1969 – 1974 )
38. Gerald Rudolph Ford ( 1974 – 1977 )
39. James Earl Carter ( 1977 – 1981 )
40. Ronald Wilson Reagan ( 1981 – 1988 )
41. George Herbert Walker Bush ( 1989 – 1993 )
42. Bill (William Jefferson) Clinton ( 1993 – 2001 )
43. George Bush ( 2001 – 2008 )
44. Barak Obama (2008-2016)
45. Donald John Trump (2017-)

.....  
**GRAMMAR**

**SEQUENCE OF TENSES**

Шақтардың сөйлемдегі қиысуы

Сабақтас құрмалас сөйлемдерде, бағыныңқы сөйлемнің баяндауышы басыңқы сөйлемнің баяндауышына шақ жағынан тәуелді болады.

Егер басыңқы сөйлемнің баяндауышы осы шақта болса, бағыныңқы сөйлемнің баяндауышы кез келген шақта (өткен шақ, осы шақ, келер шақ) тұра алады.

**Мысалы:** My friend says: that he came

he comes

he will come

Егер басыңқы сөйлемнің баяндауышы өткен шақта болса, бағыныңқы сөйлемнің баяндауышы тек өткен шақта тұрады.

My friend said that he came

he had come

he would come

he was coming

**Ескерту:**

Егер бағыныңқы сөйлемнің баяндауышы аксиома болса, онда ол басыңқы сөйлемнің баяндауышының өткен шағына қарамай осы шақта тұра алады.

He knew that: two and two is four.

Егер субъект (адам) мына етістіктер: ask, advise, propose, suggest, recommend, demand, require, insist, command, order арқылы біреудің бір нәрсе істегенін айтса, онда бағыныңқы сөйлемнің баяндауышы тұйық етістікте тұрады.

Мысалы:

1. The teacher *recommended* that the student write an action – paper. (NOT: the student wrote or would write).
2. They *insisted* that she be invited (NOT: was invited).
3. It was *required* that she take participation in this performance (NOT: took, takes).

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I. Read the sentences and translate, and determine at which time consumed verb in the sentences.**

1. I knew she had not read the letter yet.
2. She thought that pineapples grew on the trees.
3. He told us he had paid his debts more than a month before.
4. She said she had been writing the composition for more than three hours.
5. She did not know if the operation had been a success,
6. Tom phoned the police and said that all his things had been stolen.

**II . Read the sentences and translate, and determine at which time consumed verb in the sentences.**

1. I knew that they would certainly ring us up when they returned.
2. He told me that they would not go there till they found out the address.
3. She said that she had met a friend with whom they had studied at school.
4. She told me that she would hardly recognize the district because it had changed very much.
5. He asked what I would be doing when I retired.
6. He said that the documents would be sent to us as soon as they were received.
7. The nurse said that we would be able to speak to the doctor after he had examined the patient.

**III . Write the verbs in one of the Past Tenses.**

1. He says he has spent a fortnight in the Caucasus.
2. He says it did him a lot of good.
3. He says he feels better now.
4. He says his wife and he spent most of their time on the beach.
5. He says they did a lot of sightseeing.
6. He says he has a good camera.
7. He says English will be taught by Mr. Wilson.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**IV. Open the brackets using the correct form of the verb.**

1. My friend asked me who (is playing, was playing) the piano in the sitting room.
2. He said he (will come, would come) to the station to see me off.
3. I was sure he (posted, had posted) the letter.
4. I knew that he (is, was) a very clever man.
5. I want to know what he (has bought, had bought) for her birthday.
6. He said he (is staying, was staying) at the "Ritz" Hotel.
7. They realized that they (lost, had lost) their way in the dark.
8. He asked me where I (study, studied).
9. I thought that I (shall finish, should finish) my work at that time.
10. Victor said he (is, was) very busy.

**V. Open the brackets using the correct form of the verb.**

1. I knew they (to wait) for me at the metro station and I decided to hurry.
2. He says that he (to know) the laws of the country.
3. Sarie understood why Lanny (not to come) the previous evening.
4. She asked me whether I (to remember) the legend about a faithful lion.
5. I suppose they (to send) a dog after a burglar immediately.
6. He said he (to leave) tomorrow morning.
7. She says she already (to find) the book.
8. He stopped and listened: the clock (to strike) five.
9. I asked my neighbor if he ever (to travel) by air before.
10. The policeman asked George where he (to run) so early.

**VI. Put down the verb in the Past Tense in the Subordinate clause and change the verb in the Principal clause.**

Model: The captain says that his ship's speed is 17 knots.

*The captain said that his ship's speed was 17 knots.*

1. I know that your ship took part in the Antarctic expedition.
2. He thinks that he will sail on a training ship.
3. The passenger says that he can speak English quite well.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

4. They say that their ship carries cargo and passengers.
5. The captain wants to know who asked for him.
6. The engineer says that the engine is in good order.
7. My friend says that he has little time for reading detective stories.

### **VII . Write the sentence in the reported speech.**

Model: "I want to sit in the armchair", said the boy.

*The boy said that he wanted to sit in the armchair.*

1. The secretary said to me: "The delegation arrived in London yesterday".
2. "Open the window, please", she said to me.
3. He said: "I shall light a fire and make myself breakfast".
4. "Don't run to the door when you hear the bell", said the woman to her little daughter.
5. She asked me: "How long are you going to stay here?"
6. Mary asked me: "Will you spend your vacation in Moscow?"
7. "Lock the door when you leave the house", said my elder sister to me.
8. "Have you received a telegram from your wife?" she asked Robert.
9. Mabel said: "Nothing will change my decision and I shall leave for Cap Foron tonight".
10. "Please, don't smoke in the room", said the old woman to her nephew.
11. "I am shivering with cold", said the girl.

### **VIII . Change the sentences into reported speech.**

Model: *He asked, "Where does Tom live?" — He asked where Tom lived.*

- |                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. "Where did you find it?"    | 6. "When will they meet?"            |
| 2. "How will they get there?"  | 7. "Does he play golf?"              |
| 3. "He didn't know the truth." | 8. "Why did they come?"              |
| 4. "Will she come tomorrow?"   | 9. "How long have you been waiting?" |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. "What were they doing?"

10. "Did she see him?"

**IX . Translate the sentences into Kazakh and determine at which time consumed verb in the sentences.**

- 1.He asked me if I had been in the new theatre.
2. He said that he was in the theatre at the moment.
3. She told me  
that she didn't like dresses.
4. She told me that her mother hadn't liked dresses.
5. We were told that she was ill.
6. She said that she was cleaning her room.
7. Lena thought that she would be back early.

**X . Restore the following phrases using sentences with indirect speech given in the exercise above.**

- 1.*Mike told the policeman that he lost his identity card.*
2. *Jane said to Dick that Julia didn't live next to her.*
3. *She told the detective that she saw the thief in the house.*
- 4.*He said that he had eaten nothing since morning.*
5. *My girlfriend told me that she felt very bad, and she had a headache.*
6. *Tom's boss said to him that he hadn't done the work properly.*
7. *Anna said that she didn't want to wear her old dress.*
8. *Her brother told her that they would have plenty of time to do their work.*

1. Mike (to the policeman): "You know, I ..."
2. Jane (to Dick): "You're mistaken, Julia ..."
3. The woman (to the detective): "I am absolutely sure that ..."
4. He: "I ..."
5. My girlfriend (to me): "You know what, Mike, I ..."
6. Tom's boss (to Tom): "Tom, as to your last report, I am afraid, you ..."
7. Anna: "No, I'd better put on something new. I ..."
8. Her brother (to her): "Listen, we ..."



## Lesson 12

### Reading

#### American Symbols

The American flag is often called "The Stars and Stripes", it is also called "Old Glory". It represents the growth of the nation. It has 13 horizontal stripes, 7 red and 6 white which stand for the original 13 states. In the top left hand corner there are 50 white stars on a blue background: one star for each state. The national anthem of the United States is "The Star Spangled Banner". The words written during the Anglo-American war of 1812-1814 and set to the music of an old song. Every state has its own flag, its own emblem and its own anthem too.

The eagle became the national emblem of the country in 1782. It has an olive branch (a symbol of peace) and arrows (a symbol of strength). You can see the eagle on the back of a dollar bill.

The Statue of Liberty is the symbol of American democracy. It stands on Liberty Island in New York. It is one of the first things people see when they arrive in New York by sea. This National Monument was a present from France to the USA. France gave the statue to America in 1884 as a symbol of friendship. Liberty carries the torch of freedom - in her right hand. In her left hand she is holding a tablet with the inscription "July 4, 1776" - American Independence Day.

#### Vocabulary:

1. to represent - көрсету, белгілеу
2. background - артқы көрінісі
3. eagle - бүркіт
4. olive branch - зәйтүн бұтағы
5. to arrive - жету, келу
6. torch - алау

A

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### answer the questions:

1. What do people often call American flag?
2. What are the colours of the American flag?
3. How many stripes has the flag got?
4. What is the national emblem?
5. Where is the statue of Liberty placed?
6. What country did this gift to the USA?

## GRAMMAR

### MODAL VERBS

#### Модальді етістіктер

Модальді етістіктер деген түсінік қазақ тілінде мүлдем жоқ. Модальді етістіктер - сөйлемге қатысатын негізгі емес көмекші етістіктермен (do, does, did-пен шатастырмаңыз) жасалатын етістіктердің тобы. Олардың қатарына мына етістіктер жатады (жақшада өткен шақтағы түрі): can (could), may (might), must, have to, ought to, should, need.

Модальді етістік қатысқан сөйлемнің мағынасы толық болуы үшін, ол сөйлемде міндетті түрде негізгі етістік болуы тиіс. Мысалы: You can play. (Сіз ойнай аласыз.)

Сұраулы сөйлемге жауап ретінде тек модальді етістікті қолдануға болады.

Мысалы: Can you speak English? - Yes, I can. (No, I can't)

#### Модальді етістіктердің қолданылуы

Модальді етістіктер негізгі етістік болмағандықтан қосымша мағына беру үшін ғана қолданылады. Мысалы, бір әрекетті істеуге тыйым салынғандығы, істей алатындығыңыз (мүмкіншіліктің болуы), істегеніңіз жөн болатындығы, әрекеттің ықтималдылығы жайлы қосымша мағына беру үшін модальді етістіктер қолданылады.

Модальді етістіктердің қолдану ережесі:

- a) Модальді етістіктерді қарапайым етістіктерге қатысты ережелерге сай қолдануға болмайды. Бұл топтағы етістіктер жіктелмейді, есімше түрінде келмейді, герундий және инфинитив түрінде (infinitive) кездестіре алмайсыз.
- b) Модальді етістіктер жіктелмейді. Осы шақта барлық есімдіктермен бірдей түрде жазылады.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Modal verbs and their functions**

Модаль етістіктер және олардың қызметтері

Modal verbs Модаль етістіктері	Functions Қызметтері, қолданылуы	Examples Мысалдары
can (могу, умею)  to be able to	1. Біреудің бір нәрсені істей алу, істей алмау қабілетін көрсеткенде  2. Бір нәрсенің істелуін ықтималдылығын, мүмкіндігін білдіргенде 3. Сөйлеушінің біреуден рұқсат сұрауын білдіргенде 4. Сөйлеушінің іс-әрекетті орындауын өтінгенде	1. I can read French, well. He is able to speak French, but not as well as he can read it. 2. We can buy a car at the Astana Motors shop.  3. Can you borrow your pen?  4. Can you read more loudly?
will be able to  was / were able to	5. Біреудің келешекте бір нәрсені істеу, орындай алу қабілеттілігін көрсеткенде  6. Біреудің бір нәрсені істей алу қабілеттілігі өткенде болғандығын көрсету үшін	5. I will be able to speak French better in a few months.  6. I was able to run a kilometer in twelve minutes when I was younger.
could (мог)	7. Сөйлеушінің біреуден рұқсат	7. Could I make an appointment to see

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

<p>could have</p>	<p>сұрауын білдіргенде 8. Сөйлеушінің біреуден бір нәрсені істеуін өтінгенде 9. Мүмкіндік, ықтималдық, болжамды білдіргенде. 10. Біреудің бір нәрсені бұрыннан істей алатындығын көрсеткенде, мүмкіншілік, ықтималдық, білдіргенде.</p>	<p>him? 8. Could you help me? Could you speak Chinese? 9. It could be Arman calling. He often calls at this time.  10. My son could read before he started school. I could run very fast when I was young. I could have left my glasses in my other bag.</p>
<p>may (можно)  may have  might have</p>	<p>1. Сөйлеушінің біреуден рұқсат сұрауын білдіргенде қолданылады. 2. Біреудің бір нәрсе жайында болжамын, ықтималдығын, мүмкіндігін көрсетуде. 3. Шек қою, тыйым салуды білдіргенде, өткенде болған істің мүмкіндігін, жорамалын білдіргенде.</p>	<p>1. May I use your telephone? May I go out? - No, you may not. 2. It may be my mother calling. It may snow tomorrow.  3. We may only park in the space shown. I may have left it in my other bag this morning. She might have forgotten.</p>
<p>must (долженствование, должен)</p>	<p>1. Істелетін істің: a) қажеттілігін b) міндеттілігін көрсеткенде қолданылады.</p>	<p>1. He must see a doctor. He looks sick. a) We must respect our parents. b) Dogs must be kept</p>

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

.....

<p>must have</p>	<p>2. Істелінген істің ықтималдылығын, мүмкіндігін көрсетуде қолданылады. 3. Біреудің бір істі істегенінің абзал екендігін көрсету үшін.</p>	<p>on a leash. 2. It must be cold outside. It must be very difficult to learn Chinese. 3. She must have worked hard on her essay. It's very good.</p>
<p>need (нужно)</p>	<p>1. Істелінген істің а) міндеттілігін ә) қажеттілігін</p>	<p>a) I need not do it. b) They need not have written the composition.</p>
<p>Ought (должен, следует)</p>	<p>1. Істелінген істің а) міндеттілігін ә) қажеттілігін</p>	<p>a) He ought to help his mother. b) You ought to see this film.</p>
<p>Should (следовало бы)</p>	<p>1. Істелінген істің істеу керектігін</p>	<p>You should work more seriously. You should have done it.</p>

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Модаль етістіктерінің баламалары (синонимдері)

<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Can</b></p> <p>I can play the piano.(+) Asel cannot swim. (-) Can you help me ? (?) I could not ski when I was little. (past simple)</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>to be able to</b></p> <p>I am able to play the piano. Asel is able to swim. Are you able to help me? I was not able to ski when I was little.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>May</b></p> <p>You may take my pen. (+) Asan may not touch it. (-) May I come in? (?) We asked the teacher if we might use the dictionaries. (past simple)</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>to be allowed to</b></p> <p>You are allowed to take my pen. Asan is not allowed to touch it. Am I allowed to come in? We asked the teacher if we were allowed to use the dictionaries.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Must</b></p> <p>You must respect your parents. (+) You must not go there. (-) Must I learn it by heart? (?) He must work hard at his English .</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><b>to have to</b></p> <p>You have to respect your parents. I have not to go there. I have to learn it by heart. He has to work hard at his English.</p>

**ЕСКЕРТУ:** Модаль етістіктерден кейін келетін тұйық райдағы негізгі етістіктің алдына **to** демеулігі қойылмайды. Тек қана **ought** деген модаль етістігінен кейін және оның баламаларынан кейін етістіктің алдына **to** демеулігі қойылады.

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I . Write the sentences in the interrogative and in the negative forms.**

- 1.I can show you an interesting picture of the city.
- 2.He can give you his report on the life of Jack London.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

3. His brother could play the piano very well.
4. She could translate these English texts.
5. We must attend a lecture on German history on Tuesday.
6. You must return my magazines on Wednesday.
7. You must take your children to the country for the weekend.

### II . Answer the questions.

1. Can you speak English?
2. Can you write English?
3. Can you speak English well or badly?
4. Can your sister play the piano?
5. How can she play the piano?
6. Where can we get some English magazines?
7. What can you see on the walls of this room?
8. Must your aunt attend any lecture at the university?
9. What must you do to know English well?
10. When must you come to the university?

### III . Write the sentences with modal verbs *can (could)* and change it with equivalent *to be able to* .

#### Example:

1. I can carry this box. - *I am able to carry this box.*  
(to speak French, to drive a car, to come early, to learn the rule, to have breakfast, to work for ten hours).
2. He could swim very well when he was young. – *He was able to swim very well when he was young.*  
(to work much harder, to translate to English into Russian, to run quickly, to learn a long poem for ten minutes).
3. In six months he can read English newspapers. - *In six months he will be able to read English newspapers.* (to play chess better, to go on an excursion, to take an examination in History, to get up early in the morning, to buy a new bag.)

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### IV. Write down the sentences with the modal verbs *may* (*might*) and change it with equivalent *to be allowed to*.

#### Example:

1. May I open the window? - *Am I allowed to open the window?*  
(to smoke here, to use the dictionary, to come to see you, to wait for you here, to speak to you, to leave the room, to go home).
2. He said you might smoke. - *He said you were allowed to smoke.*  
(to stay here, to answer this question, to take this book, to read the text, to watch TV in the evening, to help his friend with his homework)

### V. Translate the sentences using the modal verbs.

1. Сіз кешірек келе аласыз ба?
2. Сізге бір сұрақ қоюға болады ма?
3. Сіз мені дәлізде күте тұрасыз ба?
4. Мен сізге кешке қоңырау соқсам болады ма?
5. Ол маған сол жақта қалуыма болатынымды айтты.
6. Бұл жаттығуды үйде жасауымызға болатынын мұғалім айтты.
7. Қанаттың мектепте түскі асын ішуіне болатынын анасы айтты.
8. Осы сабақтан соң, үйімізге қайтуға болатынын кім айтты?
9. Менің дәрігерге баруыма бола ма? (to see the doctor).

### VI . Complete the sentences with the modal verbs *must* and change it with equivalent *to have to*.

**Example:** You **must** be ready to answer all my questions.

*You have to be ready to answer all my questions.*

(to come by 5 o'clock, to do this work, to clean your teeth every morning, to help your mother, to try it again, to see the doctor).



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**VII . Write the sentences in the interrogative and in the negative forms.**

1. Her grandmother can knit very well.
2. I can answer the questions. They are very easy.
3. She can type. She can speak well on the telephone. She hopes she can find the job she's looking for.
4. Mike can run very fast.
5. They can understand French.
6. Kate can speak English very well.
7. My brother can come and help you in the garden.

**VIII . Translate into Kazakh.**

1. May I invite Nick to our house?
2. You may go now.
3. If you have done your homework, you may go for a walk.
4. Don't go to the wood alone: you may lose your way.
5. May I go to the post office with Mike?
6. May I take Pete's bag?
7. Don't give the vase to the child: he may break it.
8. May we take notes with a pencil?
9. You may not cross the street when the light is red.
10. May I shut the door?

**IX . Put down the modal verbs may or can.**

1. ... I come in?
2. Let me look at your exercises. I ... be able to help you.
3. I ... not swim, because until this year the doctor did not allow me to be more than two minutes in the water. But this year he says I ... stay in for fifteen minutes if I like, so I'm going to learn to swim.
4. Libraries are quite free, and any one who likes ... get books there.
5. I ... come and see you tomorrow if I have time.
6. Take your raincoat with you: it ... rain today.
7. Do you think you ... do that?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

- .....
8. I ... finish the work tomorrow if no one bothers me any more.
  9. ... we come and see you next Sunday at three o'clock in the afternoon?
  10. What time is it? – It ... be about six o'clock, but I am not sure.
  11. Only a person who knows the language very well ... answer such a question.

**X. Put down the modal verbs may (might) or can (could).**

1. ... you help me?
2. I ... imagine her speaking in public: I knew that she was so shy.
3. Something was wrong with the car: he ... not start it.
4. A fool ... ask more questions than a wise man ... answer.
5. She asked me if she ... use my telephone.
6. ... I use your pen?
7. ... I find a pen on that table?
8. You ... read this book: you know the language well enough.
9. You ... take this book: I don't need it.
10. ... I help you? 11. ... I ask you to help me?
12. The school was silent: nothing ... be heard in the long dark corridors.
13. Waiting ... be endless, you know.
14. ... you tell me the nearest way to the city museum?
15. They ... think that I am too weak to take part in the excursion, but I am strong enough to do any kind of hard work, indeed.
16. He knew this period of history very well: he had read everything on the subject he ... find in the rich university library.

## **Lesson 13**

### **Reading**

#### **The discovery of America**

In our days everybody knows what the word “America” means. First of all it is the name of the country – the United States of America – or just America. And besides America is the name of two continents – North America and South America. These two continents form the part of the world called America.

Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492, thinking he had the lands south of China, vaguely called ‘the Indies’, he sensibly called the people he found ‘Indians’.

Ironically, he was nearly correct, for the Native Indians had come from Asia, across the Bering Strait, after the last great Ice Age – about 15000 years ago. The earliest known occupation site in Canada is the Bluefish Caves of the Yukon. We don’t know much about the man. He was born in Italy in 1451 on the 9<sup>th</sup> of October but lived in Spain for a long time. He was a seaman and made many sea voyages. Columbus discovered Cuba in 1493 but he did not know it was an Island. He never landed on the mainland of North America. He discovered some more islands in Central America. Spain was very much interested in this land.

#### **Answer the questions:**

1. What does the word “America” mean?
2. Did Christopher Columbus discover the new continent of America?
3. When was he born?
4. When did he discover it?
5. Is North America an island or a continent?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

Choose the correct variant

1. My wife ... three languages.  
a) cans speak  
b) can speaks  
c) can speak  
d) cans speaks
  
2. I'm sorry, I ... join you on Wednesday.  
a) can`t  
b) can`t to  
c) don`t can to  
d) don`t can
  
3. Who ... help me with my homework?  
a) cans  
b) can  
c) cans to  
d) can to
  
4. He ... pass the exam.  
a) didn`t can  
b) couldn`t  
c) couldn`t to  
d) can
  
5. In my youth I ... 5 miles without stopping.  
a) could run  
b) could to run  
c) could ran  
d) can

**TEST**

6. People ... some things.  
a) couldn't forget  
b) couldn't forgot  
c) couldn't to forget  
d) can
  
7. Mary ... English books without a dictionary.  
a) can reads  
b) cans read  
c) can read  
d) could
  
8. Weather in England ... very quickly.  
a) cans change  
b) can to change  
c) can changes  
d) can change
  
9. My parrot ... .  
a) can't speak  
b) can't to speak  
c) can't speaks  
d) couldn't
  
10. I ... to go now because I am already late for my class.  
a) must  
b) have  
c) can  
d) need

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

11. I ... go to Paris next week because there is a very big exhibition there.

- a) must
- b) have to
- c) had
- d) may

12. ... you come for dinner on Friday night? I really want to hang out with you, so I hope you will come.

- a) can
- b) will have
- c) must
- d) must have

13. He ... give me a straight answer. He avoided my questions the whole time.

- a) shouldn't
- b) may
- c) might have
- d) will have

14. I ... understand him because I don't speak French. So, we used body language to communicate with each other.

- a) might
- b) couldn't
- c) mustn't
- d) would have

15. If you tell your boss off, you ... surely be fired.

- a) will
- b) mustn't have
- c) can
- d) could have

## Lesson 14

### Reading

#### Washington

Washington was founded in 1791 in the District of Columbia, for the purpose of serving as the capital of the United States of America. George Washington chose the place located midway to keep at close touch as possible between the states! Washington is quite new as it didn't exist for two hundred years. It is not a very large city, but it is important as the capital of the USA. There is a law in Washington against building structures higher than the

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

Capitol; therefore it presents a different appearance from New York with its skyscrapers.

The Capitol, where the Congress meets, is the very high and beautiful building with white marble columns. It is in the very centre of the city. Not far from the Capital is the Library of Congress. It holds five million books. Today Washington is a city which attracts a lot of tourists by its fashionable hotels, restaurants and sightseeing attractions as “Mount Vernon” – the house. On the first president is George Washington, the Lincoln Memorial, the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier, the White House and others. The White House, the residence of the president, is the oldest public structure in the capital and one of the most beautiful. It is said that in 1812 when England was at war with America, the British captured the city, and some of the buildings, including the Capital and the house of the presidents, were set on fire. In 1814, in order to hide the marks of the fire, the brown stone walls of the president’s home were painted white – and it has been the “White House” ever since. Among the never buildings one of most imposing is the National Gallery of Art. Washington has wooded areas and redbrick houses. And the whole of this city, with its long wide avenues, with shady trees on both sides, its low buildings and its crowds of government officials, is unlike New York with its sky-scrappers and its noisy street.

The United States is a federal union which is made up of fifty states and one independent district - the District of Columbia. The District of Columbia is the territory of the national capital of the USA, Washington, with its own laws and regulations. Washington, D.C. is situated on both banks of the Potomac river, between the two states, Maryland and Virginia.

This place was chosen by the first American President George Washington. The plot of land of a hundred square miles was bought from private owners by the state. In 1790 George Washington laid the corner-stone of the Capitol where the Congress sits. The place was called the District of Columbia in honour of Columbus, the discoverer of America. The capital got the name of Washington after the name of its founder. Washington has been the federal capital since 1800. Washington is sometimes called the

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

heart of America. It is the place where the federal government works and where each President of the United States lives. Washington is smaller in size than the largest cities of the USA, such as New York, Chicago, Detroit or Los Angeles. The population of Washington is about 11 million people. The buildings in Washington are not very tall because no building must be taller than the Capitol. But in political sense Washington is the centre of the country and the most important city of the United States.

### Vocabulary:

1. purpose - мақсат, әдейі
2. midway - жарым жолда
3. exist - бар болу, өмір сүру
4. marble columns - мрамор бағаналары
5. fashionable - сәнді
6. capture - ұстау, қамау
7. private owners - жеке меншік иелері

### Answer the questions:

1. In what state is Washington situated?
2. When was Washington founded?
3. By whom it was named?
4. Why the Parliament House is called “White House”?
5. On what river is Washington D.C. situated?

## GRAMMAR

### THE ADVERB

#### Үстеу

Үстеу - іс-әрекеттің белгісін, орнын, мезгілін, амалын, мақсат, себебін білдіретін сөз табы.

Үстеу - заттың әрқилы қимыл-ісінің (етістіктің) әр түрлі сындық, бейнелік, мекендік, мезгілдік, шарттық, мөлшерлік күй-жайларын және белгісін білдіреді. Үстеулер қолдану барысында етістіктермен тіркесіп тұрады да, іс-қимылдың қалай, қашан, қайда болатынын білдіреді. Олар сөйлемде

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

when - қашан? where - қайда? how much - неше? деген сияқты сұрақтарға жауап береді.

Үстеулер зат есім, сын есімдермен де тіркесіп келуі мүмкін.

She speaks English well. - Ол ағылшынша жақсы сөйлейді.

The book is extremely interesting. - Кітап өте қызық.

She works very hard. - Ол жұмысты ынтамен істейді.

She lives here. - Ол осында тұрады.

### Үстеудің түрлері

Үстеулер құрамына қарай төрт топқа бөлінеді:

a) негізгі түбір үстеулер:

now - қазір

there - анда

here - мұнда

when - қашан

then - кейін, үшін

often - жиі

well - жақсы

far - алыс

near - жақын

b) туынды сын есімге (сан есімге, зат есімге) -ly жұрнағы жалғану арқылы жасалады):

slowly - жай, баяу

firstly - біріншіден

partly - жартылай

weekly - апта сайын

monthly - ай сайын

c) күрделі (екі түбір сөзден құралады):

everywhere - барлық жерде

sometimes - кейде

somewhere - бір жерде

d) құранды:

by no means - қандай да болмасын

by all means - міндетті түрде

in a friendly way - достықпен, достық көңілмен

Қазақ тілінде үстеулер мағынасына қарай жеті топқа бөлінсе, ал ағылшын тілінде үстеулер төмендегі топтарға бөлінеді:



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

e) мекен жай үстеулері where - кайда? from - кайдан? деген сұрактарға жауап береді:

inside - ішінде  
there - онда (сол жерде)  
where? - кайда?  
how? - қалай?  
backward - кейін  
forward - ілгері

f) manner (сын – бейне үстеулері) how? - қалай? қалайша? қайтіп? деген сұрақтарға жауап береді:

quickly - тез  
immediately - қолма-қол  
unanimously - бірауыздан  
separately - жеке  
hardly - әрең  
together - бірге

g) frequency and time (мезгіл үстеулері) when? - қашаннан? деген сұраққа жауап береді:

often - жиі  
always - әрқашан  
today - бүгін  
tomorrow - ертең  
sometimes - кейде  
since - содан бері  
soon - жақында  
never - ешқашан  
long ago - әлдеқашан  
late - кеш

h) degree (мөлшер және күшейту үстеулері) how much? - неше? қаншалық? деген сұрақтарға жауап береді:

very - өте  
little - аз  
almost - дерлік  
rather - аса  
nearly - жаны, маңында  
quite - тіпті

i) cause (себеп-салдар үстеулері)

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

therefore - сондықтан, сол себептен  
in vain - бекеп  
without reason - себепсіз  
by force - еріксіз  
willy-nilly - лажсыздан

**ЕСКЕРТУ:** Қазақ тілінде қалайша? қалай? қайда? сөздері сұрау есімдіктеріне жатса, ал ағылшын тілінде бұл сөздер үстеуге де, есімдікке де жатады. Ал әлдеқашан, ешқашан сөздері қазақ тілінде есімдікке жатса, ағылшын тілінде үстеуге де жатады.

## **Degrees of adverb** (үстеудің шырай түрі)

Кейбір сын-бейне үстеулерінің үш түрлі шырайы болады:

**Positive Degree** - жай шырай

**Comparative Degree** - салыстырмалы шырай

**Superlative Degree** - күшейтпелі шырай

Үстеудің шырай формаларының жасалуы сын есімнің шырай формаларының жасалуымен бірдей.

Дара және туынды үстеулердің салыстырмалы шырайы **-er** жұрнағы, ал күшейтпелі шырайы **-est** жұрнағы жалғану арқылы жасалады:

fast	faster	fastest
тез	тезірек	өте тез
late	later	latest
кеш	кешірек	өте кеш
early	earlier	earliest
ерте	ертерек	өте ерте

Күрделі үстеулердің салыстырмалы шырайы үстеудің алдына **more** сөзі, ал күшейтпелі шырайы үстеудің алдына **most** сөзі қойылуы арқылы жасалады.

necessarily	more necessarily	most
necessarily	қажеттірек	өте қажет

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

correctly	more correctly	most
correctly		
дұрыс	дұрыстау	өте дұрыс
Ағылшын тілінде кейбір үстеулердің шырай түрлері түбірін өзгерту арқылы жасалады:		
little	less	least
аз	азырақ	өте аз
well	better	best
жақсы	жақсырақ	ең жақсы
badly	worse	worst
жаман	жаманырақ	өте жаман
much	more	most
көп	көбірек	тым көп
far	further	furthest
алыс	алысырақ	өте алыс

Кейбір үстеулердің шырай формалары жоғарыда айтылған екі ереже бойынша да жасалады:

often - жиі  
oftener, more often - жиірек  
oftenest, most often - өте жиі  
quickly - тез  
quicker, more quickly - тезірек  
quickest, most quickly - өте тез  
slowly - баяу  
slower, more slowly - баяуырақ  
slowest, most slowly - тым баяу

**ЕСКЕРТУ:** Ағылшын тілінде қазақ тіліндегідей кейбір мекен және мезгіл үстеулерінің: where, there, here, now, tomorrow, today, never, since т.б. шырай формалары болмайды.

Үстеулердің сөйлемдегі орын тәртібі:

a) today - бүгін

yesterday - кеше

tomorrow - ертең мезгіл үстеулері сөйлемнің басында да, соңында да келеді, бірақ сөйлемнің мағынасы өзгермейді.

Today he will go to the park. He will go to the park today. - Ол бүгін саябаққа барады.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
Yesterday he met his girl-friend. He met his girl-friend yesterday. -  
Ол кеше дос қызын кездестірді.

a) recently - жақында, before - бұрын, lately - соңғы кезде  
үстеулері тек сөйлемнің соңында келеді: I have never seen her  
before. - Мен оны бұрын көрген жоқпын.

b) often - жиі, seldom - сирек, sometimes - кейде, always - ылғи,  
never - ешқашан, usually - әдетте үстеулері сөйлемде бастауыш  
пен баяндауыштың ортасында келеді. Ал *to be* етістігі бар  
сөйлемде *to be*-ден кейін келеді:

The secretary always writes letter in the morning – Хатшы  
хаттарды ылғи таңертең жазады.

The secretary is always in the office at 9 o'clock – Хатшы  
кеңседе ылғи сағат 9-да болады.

c) Sometimes - кейде, usually - ылғи үстеулері болымды  
сөйлемнің басында, негізгі етістіктің алдында, сөйлемнің  
соңында да қолданылады:

Usually the students go to the academy in the morning. - Әдетте  
студенттер академияға таңертең барады.

The students usually go to the academy in the morning. -  
Студенттер әдетте академияға таңертең барады.

### Үстеудің сөйлемдегі қызметі мен қолданылуы

Сөйлемде үстеу негізінен пысықтауыш қызметін атқарады.

I like books that ends well. - Мен соңы жақсы аяқталатын  
кітаптарды жақсы көремін.

He speaks English slowly, but correctly. - Ол ағылшынша баяу  
сөйлегенімен, дұрыс сөйлейді.

Үстеулер жай сөйлемдерді, бағыныңқы сөйлемдерді басынқы  
сөйлемдер мен байланыстыру үшін қолданылады:

It rains, so I'll have to take my umbrella. - Жаңбыр жауып  
тұрғандықтан, мен қолшатырды алуыма тура келді.

He doesn't know where I live. - Ол менің қайда тұратынымды  
білмейді.

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

## Writing

### Exercises

#### I. Write the adverb.

1. He drives slowly . (slow)
2. She dances -----. (beautiful)
3. They read -----. (fast)
4. We did the exercise -----. (easy)
5. She talks very -----. (quiet)
6. I play -----. (good)

#### II. Insert the appropriate form of the adverb.

1. Of all the young girl-skaters Meg runs (quick).
2. She broke the records (easy) of all the other sportswomen.
3. Yesterday I came home (late) than usual.
4. Which of these two songs did he sing (well)?
5. You sleep too little. You should go to bed much (early).
6. She asked herself “Will we ever be able to live (happy) in their country?”
7. Of all the months of the year thunderstorms occur (frequently) in June.
8. In mountains rivers flow (rapidly) than in the lowland.
9. Which of the students of your group knows geography (well) of all?
10. Which of your friend’s works (hard) of all?

#### III. Complete the chart.

Adjective	Adverb	Comparative adverb
quick	quickly	more quickly
slow		
sudden		
hard		
fast		
good		
bad		

#### IV. Write the sentences with the comparative adverbs.

1. the Italians / the Swedish (drive fast)

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

*The Italians drive faster than the Swedish.* 2. the Brazilians / the English (dance well) 3. the English / the Germans (drink tea much) 4. the French / the Americans (dress stylishly) 5. the Japanese / the Australians (work hard)

### **V. Write comparative with *much* or *bit*.**

1. The Empire State Building 449m / The Statue of Liberty 93m (tall)

*The Empire State Building is much taller than the Statue of Liberty.*

2. Paris 8,550,000 people / Moscow 8,537,000 (big) 3. The Egyptian pyramids 1,400 years old / The Mexican pyramids 1,400 years old. (old) 4. Colombia 29,114,000 people / Argentina 29,920,000 (small)

### **VI. Circle the correct form.**

1. Rita plays the violin (good / well).
2. That is an (intense / intensely) novel.
3. The sun is shining (brightly / bright).
4. The girls speak Spanish (fluent / fluently).
5. The table has a (smooth / smoothy) surface.
6. We must figure our income tax returns (accurate / accurately).
7. We don't like to drink (bitter / bitterly).
8. The plane will arrive (soon / soonly).
9. He had an accident because he was driving too (fast / fastly).

### **VII. Translate into English:**

1. Ол рояльда жақсы ойнайды.
2. Мен ағылшын тілінде нашар сөйлеймін.
3. Бала ұйықтап жатқандықтан, ол жай сөйледі.
4. Мен жылдам жүгіре алмаймын.
5. Асқар футболды Болаттан жақсырақ ойнайды.
6. Айгүл фортепьянода Ардақтан нашар ойнайды.
8. Кеше мен саябақта дос қызымды кездестірдім.
9. Әдетте біз университетке таңертең келеміз.
10. Сенің жатақханаң қай көшеде?

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### **VIII . Circle the correct form.**

1. That is an (intense / intensely) novel.
2. The sun is shining (bright / brightly).
3. The boys speak Spanish (fluent / fluently).
4. We don't like to drink (bitter /bitterly) tea.
5. The plane will arrive ( soon /soonly).

### **IX . Put in so much, so many, so few or so little.**

1. When I agreed to serve on the committee, I didn't realize there would be ... meetings.
2. They take up ... of my time that I think that I'm going to have to resign.
3. The meetings are completely useless, anyway ... people put ... energy into arguing for hours about things.
4. They have ... importance that they weren't worth discussing in the first place.
5. And ... of the committee members are actually the kind of people I really want to get to know.
6. I'm sure I'll be ... happier if I live it up.

### **X . Open the brackets and put down Adjective or Adverb in the right form.**

1. I like living in the country. It's *more peaceful* (peaceful) than the city.
2. I felt very ill last week, but I'm slightly ... (good) now.
3. I can't hear you. Could you speak a little ... (loud) please?
4. Steven is ... (tall) boy in the basketball team.
5. This computer is very old. I need something ... (modern).
6. The new library is far ... (close) to my house than the old one.
7. Jane's new haircut makes her look ... (attractive).
8. This jacket was by far ... (expensive) in the shop.

## **Lesson 15**

### **Reading**

#### **The White House**

We have all heard of the famous White House in Washington, the residence of the President of the United States of America, but how many of us know why it is called the White House? This building was not always white, nor was it called the White House. But it has always been the official residence of the President of the United States.

It is the oldest federal building, the foundation-stone of which was laid on October 13, 1792 the building was designed by an architect James Hogan, who won an architectural competition for the best design for the President's house. Originally this federal building was called President's House and President's Palace. It was originally grey in colours. So why did people began to call it the White House?

This is part of American history. During the British-American War when the Americans fought for their independence, the British entered Washington and August 24, 1814 burned President's House. Only the black walls were left standing.

Some years later (1817) the President's House was rebuilt and the walls were painted white. So people began calling the President's residence the White House; but this didn't become its official name until 1902. It is interesting how many rooms in the White House are now by their colours. There is the Blue Room, the Red Room and the Green Room.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. foundation-stone - негізі тастан қаланған
2. was laid - салынған
3. independence - тәуелсіз
4. to burn - өртену
5. rebuilt - қайта салынған



# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

## Answer the questions:

1. What is the residence of the President?
1. Why it is called the White House?
2. Who was the architect of the White House?
3. When was it burned?
4. What kind of rooms are there in the White House?

## GRAMMAR

### THE GERUND

Герундий

#### Герундийдің белгісі және жасалуы

Сөйлемде - ing жұрнағына аяқталған етістіктің түрі Participle I немесе The gerund болады, бірақ бұлардың айырмашылығы Participle I -де етістік пен сын есімнің белгілері болса, ал Герундийде етістік пен зат есімнің белгілері болады. Етістік сияқты оның шақ, етіс категориялары бар.

I sat smoking and wondering what to do. (Participle I) – Мен темекі тартып отырып, не істеу керек екенін ойладым.

Smoking is health hazard. (Gerund). - Шылым шегу – денсаулыққа зиян келтіру.

**ЕСКЕРТУ:** Кей жағдайларда ол тұйық етістікке сәйкес.

Шылым шегу сөзінде етістікке де, зат есімге де тән белгі бар.

Swimming is very pleasant (pleasure). - Шомылу – жан рахаты.

Шомылу - тұйық етістікке сәйкес.

Герундийдің болымсыз түрі **Not** болымсыз демеулігінің герундийдің алдында тұруы арқылы жасалады:

Not knowing her name, we couldn't call her. - Оның атын білмей – біз оны шақыра (тоқтата) алмадық .

#### Герундийдің сөйлемдегі қызметі мен қолданылуы

1. Герундий - сөйлемде бастауыш болады: Training national personnel is an essential factor in our Republic. - Ұлттық мамандарды даярлау республикамыздағы негізгі фактор.

2. Сөйлемде баяндауыштың есім сөзден болған бөлігі болады:

Seeing is believing. - Көру – көз жеткізу.

3. Сөйлемде «**of**» предлогымен тіркесіп, анықтауыш болады:

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
The difficulties of rebuilding the plants are overcome in our country. - Өндірістерді қайта жабдықтау қиындықтары елімізде жүргізілуде.

Our group took part in celebrating the 150<sup>th</sup> anniversary of Abai yesterday. - Біздің топ кеше Абайдың 150 жылдық мерейтойын тойлауға қатысты.

4. Сөйлемде пысықтауыш болады: You can help your son by supporting him. - Сіз ұлыңызға оны қолдау арқылы көмектесе аласыз.

5. Сөйлемде to like, to dislike, to prefer т.б. етістіктерінен кейін келген герундий, герундий де, инфинитив те болып, сөйлемде толықтауыш қызметін атқарады.

I like to ski in winter. – Қыста мен шаңғы тебуді ұнатамын.

6. Сондай-ақ to avoid, to intend, to need, to mind - қарсы болу мағынасында, to remember, to want, to require етістіктерінен кейін, толықтауыш қызметін тек қана герундий атқарады:

Would you mind (her) opening the window? Терезені ашуға сіз қарсы емессіз бе?

Would you mind(my) smoking? - Сіз шылым шегуіме қарсы емессіз бе?

7. Кейбір предлогты етістіктерден және үстеулерден, сондай-ақ төмендегі предлогты сөз тіркестерінен кейін герундий келеді:

to depend on - бағынышты болу, қарамағында болу

to insist on (upon) - айтқанын істеу, дегеніне көндіру, талап ету

to know of - білу

to object to - қарсы болу, қарсы екендігін білдіру

to prevent from - болдырмау

to think of - ойлау, ниеттену, ойлану

to go on - жалғастыра беру, жалғастыру

to look forward to - дәмелену (үміттену)

to give up - бас тарту, мойындамау

to be afraid of - қорқу

to be famous for - көрнекті болу, атақты болу

to be interested in - көңіл аудару, қызығу

to be worth of – тұрарлық қасиет, тұру

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

My cold prevents me from going out. - Мен салқын тигендіктен, далаға шыға алмайтын болдым.

He thinks of marrying her. - Оның оған үйленетін ойы болды.

Please, go on reading. - Әрі қарай оқыңыз.

You are proud of being a student, aren't you? - Сіз студент болғаныңызды мақтан етесіз, солай емес пе?

She was afraid of seeing him. - Ол оны көруге қорықты.

The book is worth of reading. - Мына кітап оқуға тұрады.

8. Төмендегі предлогты сөз тіркестерінен кейін тек қана герундий қолданылады: **because of, an account of, thanks to, due to, owing to, instead of, in spite of, for the purpose of, with a view of, of (no) use.**

Thanks to his coming here I known him well. - Оның мұнда келуі, оны жақсы білуіме себеп болды.

### Writing

#### Exercises

#### I . Open the brackets.

1. Excuse me for (to break) your beautiful vase.
2. You never mentioned (to be) to Greece.
3. She was proud of (to award) the cup of a champion.
4. I don't remember (to ask) this question by anybody.
5. The cat was punished for (to break) the cup.
6. I am quite serious in (to say) that I don't want to go abroad.
7. He seemed sorry that (to be) inattentive to his child.

#### II . Translate into Kazakh.

1. Taking a cold shower in the morning is very useful.
2. I like skiing, but my sister prefers skating.
3. She likes sitting in the sun.
4. Thank you for coming.
5. I had no hope of getting an answer before the end of the month.
6. He talked without stopping.
7. Some people can walk all day without feeling tired.
8. There are two ways of getting sugar: one from beet and one from sugar – cane.
9. Jane Eyre was fond of reading.

**III. Complete the sentences with a gerund .**

1. Thomas had his car (repair) by a mechanic.
2. I don't mind (clean), but I'd like (have) someone to help with the rest of the housework especially in the kitchen.
3. I'm not very good at (cook). But I love to look after our daughter Danielle.
4. The policeman made the suspect (lie) on the ground.
5. Maria got Ed (wash) the pipettes.
6. She always has her car (fix) by the same mechanic.
7. Jane got her book (publish) by a subsidiary publisher.
8. We have to help Marie (find) her keys.

**IV. Complete with a gerund.**

1. I'm quite good at ... .
2. I'm not very good at ... .
3. When I'm on my own, I really enjoy ... .
4. I think that ... is very relaxing.
5. ... is my favourite holiday activity.
6. The job I hate most in the house is ... .

**V. Complete with a gerund.**

1. Does he prefer (коньки немесе шаңғы тебу)?
2. Did you enjoy (ойын көру)?
3. He is in the habit of (ерте тұру).
4. Is the film worth (көру)?
5. He dreams of (Африкаға бару).
6. The translation needs (өңдеу).
7. He stopped (шылым шегу) a week ago.
8. I don't mind (не істеу керек екенін айтсын).
9. He went away without (маған қарау).
10. Do you have any objections (сізге осы оқиғаны айтып берсін).

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### **VI . Put down the Gerund in the right form.**

1. I can't remember ... him before (to see).
2. The machine needs ... (to clean).
3. She is angry at ... for (to send).
4. You should avoid ... rules (to break).
5. She entered the office without ... (to notice).
6. I am sorry for ... you (to disturb).
7. We can't excuse their not ... our invitation (to answer).
8. The cat was punished for ... the cup (to break)
9. The cat was afraid of ... and hid itself under the sofa. (to punish).
10. After ... through and ... the student's papers, the teacher handed them back. (to look), (to ask).

### **VII . Open the brackets and put down the Gerund.**

1. Excuse me for (to break) your beautiful vase.
2. You never mentioned (to be) to Greece.
3. She was proud of (to award) the cup of a champion.
4. I don't remember ever (to meet) your sister.
5. I don't remember (to ask) this question by anybody.
6. The cat was punished for (to break) the cup.
7. The cat was afraid of (to punish) and hid itself under the sofa.

### **VIII . Open the brackets and put down the Gerund.**

1. Little David couldn't bear (to recite) his lessons in the presence of his stepfather and Miss Mudstone. They frightened him so that he couldn't help (to make) mistakes though he tried hard to avoid (to displease) them and (to scold).
2. The girls were busy (to pack) when one of them suddenly remembered (to leave) the milk on the stove which was probably boiling over.
3. The girl was proud of (to choose) to represent the sportsmen of the school at the coming competition. She thanked her classmates for (to choose) her and promised to do her best to win.
4. I landed in London on an autumn evening.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### **IX . Translate into Kazakh.**

1. I avoided speaking to them about that matter.
2. She burst out crying.
3. They burst out laughing.
4. She denied having been at home that evening.
5. He enjoyed talking of the pleasures of traveling.
6. Excuse my leaving you at such a moment.
7. Please forgive my interfering.
8. He gave up smoking a few years ago.
9. They went on talking.
10. He keeps insisting on my going to the south.

### **X . Translate into English.**

1. Сабақтың соңында олар күлгенін қойды.
2. Олар қашан мазмұндама жазуын аяқтайды?
3. Саяжайға баруды келесі аптаға қалдырсақ.
4. Мен сенің терезе ашуыңа қарсы емеспін.
5. Мен сурет салуды ұнатамын.
6. Біз шомылудан керемет ләззат алдық.
7. Біз баяндама талқылауды келесі күнге қалдырдық .
8. Ол кіріп келсе де, мен әндетуді тоқтатпадым.

## **Lesson 16**

### **Reading**

#### **US HOLIDAYS**

In the USA Constitution there is no provision for national holidays. Each state has the right to decide which holiday to observe. Many states have holidays of their own. Independence Day is the holiday, commemorating the signing of the Declaration of Independence on July 4<sup>th</sup>, 1776. The American colonies declared their independence from Britain. Many families celebrate the Fourth of July by having picnics and, at night, watching fireworks. Labor Day honors the American worker. Just as Memorial Day means the beginning of summer, Labor Day, which falls on the first Monday in September, marks the end of

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
summer. For many students, the school year starts the day after Labor day.

Columbus Day celebrates Christopher Columbus's arrival in the America in 1492. As Columbus was Italian, working for Spain, Columbus Day is especially important for many Italian-Americans and Hispanic-Americans. Although Halloween, on October 31, is not an official holiday, it is a very special day. On Halloween, children dress in costume as all kinds of things – as witches, ghosts, monsters, pirates, TV characters, and even computers and cereal boxes. The windows of many houses have Halloween decorations and Jack-o'-lanterns. ( Jack-o'-lanterns are pumpkins that have been carved with strange faces and have a candle inside.) The children go from house to house, knocking on doors and saying "trick or treat". The people in the houses give the children candy or some other treat. If they don't, the children might play a small trick on them! Every year, Americans celebrate Thanksgiving. Families and friends get together for a big feast. The meal usually includes roast turkey with stuffing and gravy, a sweet sauce made from cranberries, sweet potatoes, and pumpkin pie. What a meal! It's not surprising that a recent Thanksgiving tradition is to sit after dinner in front of the TV watching a professional football game. Christmas, marking the birth of Christ in the Christian religion, is another time when many families get together. Christmas is an important time for giving gifts. In fact, people start buying gifts right after Thanksgiving, although Christmas is a month away. Many families put up a Christmas tree and bake lots of special Christmas cookies. Small children believe that their gifts come from Santa Claus. Naturally, children are the first to get out of bed on Christmas morning.

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

## Vocabulary:

1. provision - қамтамасыз ету
2. to observe - бақылау
3. commemorate - мерекелеу
4. feast - банкет, той
5. trick - әзіл, қалжың
6. treat - көңіл көтеру

## Answer the questions:

1. Is there any provision for national holidays?
2. When do Americans celebrate the Independence day?
3. In what year did the USA take its independence?
4. When do they celebrate Christmas?

## Writing

1. How are my goldfish? I hope you didn't forget ... them.
  - a) to feed
  - b) feed
  - c) feeding
2. Your reproach is not fair. I am surprised ... you're having said this.
  - a) of
  - b) on
  - c) at

## TEST

3. The teacher had to stop several times ... the rule because she saw that it was difficult for the children to understand it.
  - a) explaining
  - b) to explain
  - c) explain
4. I don't approve of your behavior. You'd better stop ... with everybody.
  - a) to quarrel
  - b) quarreling
  - c) quarrel



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. I am not at all sure if Arthur is really interested ... the truth.
- a) in learning
  - b) to learn
  - c) learn
6. Sheila is very upset. She isn't used ... being treated like that.
- a) on
  - b) to
  - c) in
7. I don't like ... to - and that, exactly, is what you are trying to do.
- a) to be lied
  - b) be lied
  - c) being lied
8. Anne was able to keep the kids still ... telling them an interesting story.
- a) by
  - b) on
  - c) instead of
9. Why would you suggest ... her? She can cope with the task all by herself.
- a) help
  - b) helping
  - c) to help
10. I enjoy making practical jokes about people, but I hate ... fun of.
- a) being made
  - b) to make
  - c) making
11. She was a motherly soul. She asked me to come in and insisted ... my taking a cup of tea with the family.
- a) in
  - b) on
  - c) at
12. Bob found himself in an awkward situation ... coming to see his friend too early.
- a) without
  - b) for
  - c) through
13. He was suspected ... concealing important information from the police.
- a) of
  - b) in
  - c) at

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

14. I wish the weather would

get better. I am tired ...  
having to be indoors all  
the time.

- a) about
- b) at
- c) of

15. I am sorry ... having  
broken my promise.

- a) for
- b) of
- c) about

## Lesson 17

### Reading

#### Canada

Canada is the second largest country in the world – nearly as big as all of Europe. Only the Russian Federation is larger. Canada is about 7730 km from east to west. Its only neighbour is the USA, which includes Alaska in the north west. With such size the country can boast a tremendous variety of topography.

The country is made up of 10 provinces and two northern territories. Ontario and Quebec are collectively termed central Canada, although Canadians will often refer to this area as eastern Canada.

Though much of the land is lake and river – filled forest, there are mountains, plains and even a small desert. Canada has seven of the world's largest lakes and also contains three of the globe's longest 20 rivers. Great lakes – lakes Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie and Ontario lie on the border between the USA and Canada. Great lakes have always played a major role in the economy.

The population of 27.3 million works out to close to just two people per sq. km. In the countryside the population is very thinly spread – the average Canadian farm is 200 hectares in size. The government is a constitutional monarchy and the capital is Ottawa in Ontario.

There are two official languages in the country, English and French. A movement within Quebec, the one predominantly French province, to separate from Canada and form a new country has waxed and waned since the mid-1960s.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
Canada is a young country with great potential and a people working to forge a distinct national identity while struggling to hold the parts together.

### The Symbols of Canada



### Flag and Anthem

Canada's current flag was proclaimed in 1965 after 2000 public design entries were hotly debated in parliament. In the centre of the flag there is a red sugar maple leaf, Canada's best known symbol. The side bars represent the ocean boundaries and are not blue because an important reason for the entire procedure was to show independence from Britain and France. Before the new flag, between 1924 and 1965, the Red Ensign, which included a Union Jack, rippled over the country.

Each province also has its own flag.

The national anthem, "O Canada", was composed by Calyxes Lava lee in 1880.

### Vocabulary:

1. thinly spread - сирек орналасқан
2. predominantly - басым, үстем
3. to wax and to wan - өзгеру
4. forge - алға жылжу
5. visible - көрнекті

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

1. That night, ... up to his room he thought of his unpleasant duty.
  - a) went
  - b) going
  - c) having go
2. She smiled ... the joke.
  - a) remembered
  - b) to remember
  - c) remembering
3. ... so little in the country, I am afraid I cannot answer all your questions.
  - a) seeing
  - b) having seen
  - c) to see
4. A new road ... the plant with the railway station will soon be built.
  - a) connecting
  - b) having connected
  - c) connected
5. ... two days before the conference he had a lot of time to see Edinburgh.
  - a) to arrive
  - b) arriving
  - c) having arrived

**TEST**

6. I felt very tired ... the whole day in the sun.
  - a) being worked
  - b) having worked
  - c) work
7. He speaks like a man ... his opinion of everything.
  - a) taking
  - b) takes
  - c) taken
8. She enters, ... by her mother.
  - a) accompanying
  - b) being accompanying
  - c) accompanied
9. ... by the crash, he leapt to his feet.
  - a) arousing
  - b) have been aroused
  - c) aroused
10. ... about the bandits, he left his valuables at home.
  - a) warned
  - b) having been warned
  - c) warning

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

11. ... that they were trying to poison him, he refused to eat anything.
- a) convincing
  - b) convinced
  - c) convince
12. Tom, ... at what he had done, could at first say nothing.
- a) horrified
  - b) having horrified
  - c) horrifying
13. Where are the Great lakes situated?
- a) between Canada and the USA
  - b) in Mexico
  - c) in india
14. What languages are spoken in Canada?
- a) English
  - b) English and French
  - c) Spanish
15. When was Canada's current flag proclaimed?
- a) 2978
  - b) 1965
  - c) 1980

## Lesson 18

### Reading

#### Holidays

The school summer holidays in Canada are from the end of June to Labor Day in early September. This is also the period when most people take their vacations. University students have a longer summer break running from some time in May to the beginning or middle of September. Labor Day is an important holiday as this long weekend is unofficially seen as the end of summer. It marks the closing of many businesses, attractions and

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
services, and the beginning of a change of hours of operation for many others. Although not officially a holiday, Halloween, 31 October, is a significant and fun celebration. Based on a Celtic pagan tradition, Halloween is a time of ghosts, goblins and witches. Children dress in costume and in the evening go door to door 'trick-or-treating' where they receive candy treats. Houses are decorated with candle-lit hollowed-out pumpkins. Adults, too often have costume parties. Traditionally costumes have been based on the supernatural but nowadays anything goes. In larger cities, the gay community has adopted Halloween as a major event and nightclubs are often the scene of wild costume parties. March Break is a week-long intermission in studies for elementary and high school students across the country. The time taken each year varies with each province and school board but is sometime in the month of March. Many people take this as an opportune time for a holiday and all trains, planes and buses are generally very busy.

### **National Holidays**

The following is a list of the main national public holidays:

#### *January*

New Year's Day (1 January)

#### *April-May*

Easter (Good Friday, also Easter Monday for government & schools)

Victoria Day (Monday preceding May 24 except in the Atlantic Provinces)

#### *July*

Canada Day, called Memorial Day in Newfoundland (1 July)

#### *September-October*

Labor Day (first Monday in September)

Thanksgiving (second Monday in October)

#### *November-December*

Remembrance Day (11 November-banks & government )

Christmas Day (25 December)

Boxing Day (26 December – many retailers open, other businesses closed)

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

## Vocabulary:

1. vacation - демалыс, каникул
2. unofficially - ресми емес
3. ghost - жын, шайтан
4. witch - сиқыршы, мыстан
5. pumpkin - асқабақ
6. adult - ер жеткен, үлкен
7. intermission - үзіліс, кідіру

## GRAMMAR

### THE PREPOSITION

#### Предлог

Ағылшын тілінде орынға (мекенге) және қозғалыс бағытына арналған көмекші сөздер бар. Олардың кейбірі уақытқа қатысты да қолданыла береді. Мысалы: *in*, *on* және *at* деген предлог уақытқа да, орынға да қатысты қолданылады.

#### Қалыптасқан тіркестер

<b>At</b>	<b>In</b>	<b>on</b>
at home	in a car	on a bus
at work	in a taxi	on a train
at school	in a helicopter	on a plain
at university	in a boat	on a ship
at college	in a lift (elevator)	on a bicycle, on a motorbike
at the top	in the newspaper	on a horse, on an elephant
at the bottom	in the sky	on the radio, on television
at the side	in a row	on the left, on the right
at reception	in Oxford Street	on the way
at 3o'clock	in three months	on Sunday
at the end	in January	on a hot Summer day

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Prepositions of place  
Мекен жай предлогтары

<b>In</b>	В	кеңістік, бөлме, ғимараттың түрлері, көше, қала (ауыл), кітап, көлік, сурет, қағазға, теңіз-көлдерге қатысты қолданылатын көмекші сөз. Мағынасы қазақ тіліндегі “ ішінде” дегенді білдіреді. The children are <b>in</b> the garden.
<b>inside</b>	Внутри	ішінде, ішкі жағында. Бір заттың ішінде, ішкі жағында орналасқан зат есімді сипаттаған кезде қолданылады. <i>Мысалы:</i> Is there anything <b>inside</b> the box? - Қораптың ішінде бір нәрсе бар ма?
<b>At</b>	У	бір заттың белгілі бір орында, жерде, бір заттың айналасында, маңында тұрғандығын сипаттағанда және концерт, кино секілді адам жиналатын жағдайларды сипаттағанда қолданылады. Мысалы: <b>at</b> ther corner (бұрышта), <b>at</b> the bus stop (аялдамада), <b>at</b> the concert (концертте)
<b>On</b>	На	бір заттың екінші бір заттың үстінде, бетінде, кей сөздерде ішінде екендігін білдіретін көмекші сөз. Көшеге, тегіс беті бар заттарға және қоғамдық көліктер мен теледидар (радиоға) қатысты қолданылады. Мысалы: <b>on</b> the box (table) қораптың (үстелдің) үстінде, <b>on</b> the radio (TV) радиода (теледидарда).
<b>in front of</b>	Перед	алдында (алдыңғы жағында) деген мағынаны беретін көмекші сөз. <i>Мысалы:</i> The cat is sleeping <b>in front of</b> the chair. - Мысық орындықтың



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

		алдында ұйықтап жатыр.
<b>behind</b>	позади, за	артында (арт жағында), бір заттан кейінгі жер деген мағынаны береді. <b>behind</b> көмекші сөзі <b>in front of</b> көмекші сөзінің антонимі (қарама-қарсы мағынада) болады. Мысалы: Our school is <b>behind</b> the supermarket. - Біздің мектеп супермаркеттің арт жағында (артында).
<b>between</b>	Между	арасында, екеуінің ортасында. Екі заттың (зат есім) арасында тұрған заттың орнын сипаттағанда осы <b>between</b> көмекші сөзін пайдаланамыз. <i>Мысалы:</i> Our house is <b>between</b> the hospital and the university. - Біздің үйіміз аурухана мен университеттің арасында.
<b>By</b>	у, рядом, к, возле, около	<b>by</b> көмекші сөзі “маңында”, “жанында”, “қасында”, т.с.с. мағыналарды береді. <i>Мысалы:</i> We live in a large cottage <b>by</b> the sea. - Біз теңіздің жанында үлкен коттеджде тұрамыз.
<b>Of</b>	Из	ілік –ның, нің Бұл менің ағамның үйі. This is the house <b>of</b> my brother. шығыс –тан, -тен Мына пальто жүннен жасалған. This coat is made <b>of</b> wood.
<b>Near</b>	около, вблизи	бір заттың екінші бір заттың жақын маңында (қасында, жанында) бірақ нақты қай жағында тұрғаны белгісіз екендігін білдіру үшін қолданылады. She lives <b>near</b> the university.
<b>through</b>	Через	арқылы. Біз Лондонға Темза көпірі арқылы бардық. We go to London

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

		through the bridge of Thames.
<b>under</b>	Под	асты, астында. <b>Under</b> көмекші сөзі over көмекші сөзіне антоним болғандықтан түсіндірмесі over-нің түсіндірмесіне толықтай кері болады. Мысалы: The cat is sleeping <b>under</b> the table. - Мысық үстелдің астында ұйықтап жатыр.
<b>round</b>	Вокруг	айналасында, төңірегінде деген мағынаны береді. The children are dancing <b>round</b> the fir-tree.
<b>above</b>	Над	жоғары. Above сөзінің синонимі - over. Бірақ екеуінің екі бөлек түсінік беретін кездері де болады. Бір зат екінші бір заттан жоғары тұрған болса, және екі заттың арасында ашық орын (кеңістік) болса, онда above көмекші сөзі қолданылады және ауа-райын айтқанда да қолданылады. Мысалы: The picture hangs <b>above</b> your bed. - Сурет сенің кереуетіңнің жоғары жағында (үстінде) ілініп тұр. The temperature is above zero.- Температура нөлден жоғары.
<b>below</b>	ниже	төмен. Below сөзінің синонимі - under. Бірақ екеуінің екі бөлек түсінік беретін кездері де болады. Below сөзі above сөзіне антоним болғандықтан түсіндірмесі толықтай керісінше болады. Мысалы: The temperature is <b>below</b> zero -Температура нөлден төмен.
<b>Over</b>	над, за, через	үсті, үстінде. Over сөзінің above сөзіне ұқсас болуы: екеуі де бір заттың жоғарғы жағында орналасады. Above заттың үстіне тимей тұрған жағдайда, ал over типі тұрған жағдайда

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

		қолданылады. Мысалы: Put your coat <b>over</b> your shirt. - Пальтоңды жейдеңнің үстіне қой.
<b>outside</b>	За	сыртында, сыртта. Бұның мағынасы inside-қа қарама-қарсы екені көрініп тұр. <i>Мысалы:</i> He is waiting <b>outside</b> . - Ол сыртта күтіп тұр.
<b>among</b>		арасында, ортасында. Топтың ішінде, заттардың (адамдардың) арасындағы зат есімді сипаттау үшін қолданылады. <i>Мысалы:</i> His money will be divided <b>among</b> his children. - Оның ақшасы балаларының арасында бөлінеді.
<b>opposite</b>	Напротив	қарама-қарсы бетте (жақта). Екі зат есімнің бір-бірлеріне бетпе-бет орналасқанын сипаттау үшін қолданылады. <i>Мысалы:</i> Our university is <b>opposite</b> the central library. - Біздің университет орталық кітапхананың қарсы жағында (екеуі бетпе-бет орналасқан).
<b>With</b>	С	бірге. I live <b>with</b> my parents. Мен ата - анаммен бірге тұрамын.

**Prepositions of direction and motion**

Қимыл қозғалыс предлогтары

<b>To</b>	к, в	қозғалыстың қандай орынға (мекенге) бағытталғанын білдіреді. <b>To</b> -дың қазақша тікелей немесе жанама аудармасы жоқ, қолданыс аясы өте кең көмекші сөз. Дегенмен, бағытқа қатысты қолданылатын жағайда “ <b>жаққа</b> ” деген көмекші сөзді балама етіп алуымызға болады. Тағы барыс
-----------	------	--

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

		септігінің (кімге? неге? қайда?) -ға (-ге), -қа (-ке) жалғауларын зат есімге жалғау арқылы сөйлемдегі <b>to</b> көмекші сөзінің орнын толтыруға болады. Мысалы: I'm going <b>to</b> Almaty. - Мен Алматыға (Алматы жаққа) барғалы жатырмын.
<b>Into</b>	В	ішке қарай. He came <b>into</b> the room. Ол бөлмеге кірді.
<b>out of</b>	Из	сыртқа қарай. The boy ran <b>out of</b> the room. Бала бөлмеден жүгіріп шықты.
<b>From</b>	От	қозғалыстың қандай орыннан (мекеннен) бастау алғандығын білдіреді. <b>From</b> -ның қазақша тікелей немесе жанама аудармасы жоқ, қолданыс аясы өте кең көмекші сөз. Дегенмен, бағытқа қатысты қолданылатын жағдайда “ <b>жақтан</b> ” деген көмекші сөзді балама етіп алуымызға болады. Тағы шығыс септігінің (кімнен? неден? қайдан?) -нан (-нен), -тан (-тен), -дан (-ден) жалғауларын зат есімге жалғау арқылы сөйлемдегі <i>from</i> көмекші сөзінің орнын толтыруға болады. Мысалы: Where is Anar <b>from</b> ? - Анар қай жақтан (қайдан) болады? She is <b>from</b> Kazakhstan. - Ол Қазақстаннан.
<b>towards</b>	К	таман, қарай. Askar was walking <b>towards</b> the sea. Асқар теңізге қарай кетті.
<b>across</b>	Через	арқылы. I go to the university <b>across</b> the bridge. Мен университетке көпір арқылы барамын.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

<b>along</b>	по, вдоль	бойлай. I run <b>along</b> the rivers. Мен өзен бойлай жүгірдім.
<b>Up</b>	на, вверх	жоғары қарай, жоғарыға. Бұл сөздің мағынасы <b>down</b> сөзінің мағынасына карама-қарсы. Қозғалыстағы дене төменнен жоғарыға қарай бағытталғанда <b>up</b> көмекші сөзін қолданамыз. Мысалы: He went up the hill. - Ол қырға (жоғарыға) қарай кетті. Stand <b>up</b> please. Орныңыздан тұрыңыз.
<b>down</b>	с, вниз	төмен қарай, төменге қарай, төменге. Қозғалыстағы дене биік, жоғары орыннан төмен орынға қарай бағытталғанда <b>down</b> сөзін қолданамыз. Мысалы: He came down the hill. - Ол қырдан төмен қарай түсті (келді).
<b>Off</b>	с (поверхности)	-дан, -ден She took all the things off the table. Ол столдан барлық затты алды.

**Writing**

**Exercises**

**I . Find the correct Preposition.**

Put down (at, in,on).

1. Will you be ... home today? (at, in,on).
2. He is never late. He always comes ... time.
3. How many students are ... your class?
4. The teacher wrote something ... the board.
5. Many people work ... this building.
6. I will meet you ... 7:00 PM.
7. Let's meet ... Wednesday.
8. I am going to Japan ... seven days.
9. I met John ... my friend's party.
10. She was sitting ... her car.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**II . Choose the right variant.**

1. I am going to the store ... 10 minutes. (on, in)
2. Michael like to drink wine ... his dinner. ( with, in)
3. He is standing ... the bank. (in front, in front of)
4. She told me ... her trip. (on, about)
5. We moved the table ... the living room to the kitchen. ( from, at)
6. She will drive me ... school.( at, to)
7. I am going ... vacation. (on, in)
8. I am going ... a walk. (for, on)
9. I will see you ... October. ( on, in)
10. My brother loves to talk ... the phone with his friends. ( in, on)

**III . Put the prepositions.**

1. I have not seen him ... the summer.
2. I am going there ... three weeks.
3. We had our party ... 8:00 p.m until 10:00 p.m
4. I have been sick ... Sunday.
5. They have been sick ... three days.
6. I will be ready ... 30 minutes.
7. Kelly has not seen him ... two weeks.
8. She slept ... one hour.
9. My sister will be here ... two hours.
10. I have not eaten ... this morning.

**IV. Put it, on, at.**

1. ... the weekend
- 2.... the morning.
3. ... Tuesday
- 4.... 12 o'clock
5. ... night
6. John is sleeping. He´s still ... bed.
- 7.... April 2<sup>nd</sup> .
8. We're having a party ... the Sixth of September.
9. There weren't any chairs. So I sat ... the floor.
10. He started the job ... 1991.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**V. Put in *at, on* or *in*.**

1. Mozart was born in Salzburg *in* 1756.
2. I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her ... Tuesday.
- 3 The price of elecrricity is going up ... October.
4. ... weekends, we often go for long walks in the country.
- 5 I've been invited to a wedding ... 14 February.
6. Jonathan is 63. He'll be retiring from his job ... two years' time.
7. I'm busy just now, but I'll be with you ... a moment.
8. Jenny's brother is an engineer, but he doesn't have a job ... the moment.
9. There are usually a lot of parties ... New Year's Eve.

**VI . Put down the prepositions with or by.**

1. The boy cut his finger ... a knife.
2. The boat was carried ... the waves into the open sea.
3. The teacher was pleased ... our work.
4. America was discovered ... Columbus.
5. "Hamlet" was written ... Shakespeare.
6. We eat soap ... a spoon.
7. He was killed ... a knife.
8. He was knocked down ... a big stick.
8. She was taken to hospital ... an ambulance.
9. He was treated ... very effective drugs.
10. He wrote a letter ... a pencil.
11. He was scolded ... his mother.

**VII . Fill in the blanks with prepositions (*in, at, on*)**

1. Maira's birthday is ... September 24.
2. We can have the meeting ... my office.
3. The cat sat ... the mat.
4. My children are ... home.
5. The television is ... the living room.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### **VIII . Put in *at, on or in.***

1. I don't like driving ... night.
2. My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready ...two hours.
3. The telephone and the doorbell rang ... he same time.
4. Mary and David always go out for dinner ... their wedding anniversary.
5. It was a short book and easy to read. I read it ... a day.
6. ... Saturday night I went to bed ... midnight.
7. We travelled overnight to Paris and arrived ... 5 o'clock ... the morning.
8. The course begins ... 7 January and ends sometime ... April.
9. I might not be at home ... Tuesday morning, but I'll be there ... the afternoon.

### **IX . Translate.**

1. Менің ұялы телефоным сумкамның ішінде.
2. Балалар бақшада ойнап жүр.
3. Менің ағылшын кітабым столдың үстінде.
4. Амир өзен жағасында тұр.
5. Менің папамның портреті қабырғада екі терезенің арасында ілулі.
6. Бүгінгі температура нөлден төмен болды.
7. Үйдің артында үлкен алма бағы бар.
8. Мен автобуста досыма қарама-қарсы отырдым.
9. Біздің университеттің алдында әдемі гүл бақшасы бар.
10. Менің анам Алматыдан Астанаға кеше ұшақпен ұшып кетті.

### **X . Put down the prepositions *to or by.***

1. He bought a book ... English poems and gave it ... his sister.
2. I wrote ... him ... asking to send me a box ... chocolates.
3. The roof ... the house is very old.
4. There is a monument ... Pushkin in the Square ... Arts.
5. One wheel ... my car must be changed.
6. He was standing outside the door ... his house and explaining ... the mechanic what was wrong with his car.



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

7. I sent a letter ... my friend.
8. London is the capital ... Great Britain.
9. I explained ... the teacher that by the end ... lesson I had not finished the translation ... the text and that's why I had not handed it ... him.

### **Lesson 19** **Reading**

#### **Australia**

Australia, or the Commonwealth of Australia, as it is officially called, is situated on the island continent. It also occupies the Island of Tasmania and some minor islands round the coast of the continent. It is a highly developed industrial-agrarian country. Its area is about 8 million square kilometres. It is the only state in the world that occupies the territory of a whole continent. The capital of Australia is Canberra, which became the capital only in 1927. From 1787 to 1867 Australia was a place where criminals were sent from Britain. That is why the official language of Australia is English. Almost one half of Australian territory is occupied by deserts and semideserts. For quite a long period of time it was thought to be useless for economic development. But it is rich in coal, iron ore, bauxite, uranium, lead and many other mineral resources. For almost a century the production and export of sheep wool was the basis of the economy of the country. Now the most important industries are oil, chemical, ore mining, radioelectronics, and food industry. The country exports agricultural products and raw materials. As for the nature, the commonest trees of Australia are the eucalyptus and the Australian acacia or mimosa, the national emblem of the country. Such unusual animals as a kangaroo or a koala-bear originate from Australia. Australia is one of the most unusual and exotic countries of the world. A significant feature of modern Australian society is the representation of a lot of cultures drawn from many lands by its people. Historically part of the British Empire and

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
now a member of a Commonwealth of Nations, it is a relatively prosperous and independent nation.

### The Symbols of Australia



### Flag

Behind a national flag is the history of the country it represents, the past and present of its people. The Australian flag has the British flag in the top left-hand corner and shows the stars of the Southern Cross in white on a blue field.

### Vocabulary:

1. to occupy - ие болу, алып жату
2. significant - маңызды, мәнді
3. wattle - тоқылған шыбық
4. island - арал
5. rich – бай

### Answer the questions:

1. Where is Australia situated?
2. What is the capital of Australia?
3. What is the other name of the country ?
4. What do you know about Australia's flora and fauna?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

1. Did you go out ...  
Friday evening?  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
2. Susanne had a headache  
... New Year's Day.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
3. Mary went on holiday  
... Monday.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
4. The conference is ... 6  
June.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
5. Wolfgang met Michaela  
... the way to work.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
6. Do not walk ... the  
grass.  
a) in  
b) at

**TEST**

- c) on
7. Put the notice ... the  
noticeboard.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
8. My parents bought their  
house ... 1967.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
9. Milan is ... the north of  
Italy.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
10. I'll give you the money I  
owe you \_\_\_\_\_ the end of  
the month.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
11. I live ... Vienna.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
  
12. Moira lives ... Toronto.  
a) in  
b) at

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- c) on  
13. Her office is ... the end  
of the corridor.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
14. There are lots of  
managers ... my company.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on
15. David bought his car ...  
1998.  
a) in  
b) at  
c) on

## Lesson 20

### Reading

#### An Upside – Down World

You know that Australia is English – speaking country. And you know it is on the other side of the world.

Australia becomes an English colony after it was visited by Captain James Cook. When the early settlers came to Australia, they began to kill the Aborigines or to drive them away from the best parts of their land.

What will you find if you go to Australia? It will seem to you an upside-down world. New Year is in the middle of summer, the middle of winter is in June, and the winter months are never cold. During the Christmas holidays people often sunbathe on the beach or swim and surf in the ocean. Australia is the hottest place in Southern Hemisphere. Hot winds blow from the north; cold winds blow from the south. The native trees never lose their leaves in winter.

Australia is a land of birds and animals which cannot be found in other parts of the world. You certainly know those animals, and perhaps you have seen some of them at the Zoo. They are the kangaroo, koala, echidna, dingo and many others.

What about the climate? Australians say that they can sleep out of doors all the year round. The sun shines brightly in winter and it

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
is very hot in summer. Snow can be seen only on the highest mountains. There is not much rain many parts of the country. In bad times, and in the driest parts, animals may die for want of water.

### Answer the questions:

1. Whose colony was Australia in the past?
2. What did the early settlers do to the Aborigines?
3. Why does Australia seem an upside- down world?
4. What kinds of animals are found in Australia?
5. What do you know about the climate?

### Writing

1. Choose the right variant.  
What was **the homework** for today.  
a) the Subject  
b) the Predicate  
c) the Object
2. **One** must keep one's word.  
a) the Subject  
b) the Predicate  
c) the Object
3. **"A, an"** is the Indefinite article.  
a) the Subject  
b) the Predicate  
c) the Object

### TEST

4. **To answer** this question is not so easy.  
a) the Subject  
b) the Predicate  
c) the Object
5. I'm **going** to the library this morning.  
a) the Gerund  
b) the Infinitive  
c) the Pronoun

What is the Subject or Predicate expressed by.

1. **Speaking and reading** English is the best way to learn English.  
a) the Gerund  
b) the Noun  
c) the Pronoun

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

7. Take this book. **It's** very interesting.
- a) the Gerund
  - b) the Noun
  - c) the Pronoun
8. What was the **homework** for today?
- a) the Gerund
  - b) the Noun
  - c) the Pronoun
9. She is in **good health**.
- a) the Noun
  - b) the Pronoun
  - c) the Adverb
10. Whose book is this? It's **mine**.
- a) the Gerund
  - b) the Noun
  - c) the Pronoun
11. The lesson is **over**. Our time is **up**.
- a) the Noun
  - b) the Pronoun
  - c) the Adverb
12. You can see this animal on Australia's gerb.
- a) bear
  - b) kangaroo
  - c) cat
  - d)
13. A large flightless bird.
- a) swan
  - b) bird
  - c) emu
  - d)
14. An Australian wild dog.
- a) dingo
  - b) coala
  - c) wolf
15. An Australian animal like a small bear.
- a) kangaroo
  - b) coala
  - c) kookaburra

## Lesson 21

### Reading

#### New Zealand

New Zealand is an island country in the Southwest Pacific Ocean. The country is situated on two main islands - the North Island and the South Island - and several dozen smaller islands. Wellington is the capital of New Zealand and Auckland is the largest city.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

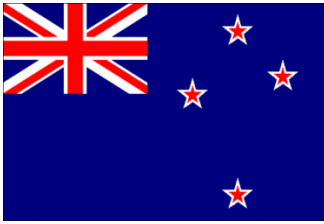
English is the official language of New Zealand and is spoken throughout the country. Many native people speak their own language, Maori, in addition to English.

The country once belonged to the British empire. Today it is an independent member of the Commonwealth of Nations, an association of Britain and a number of its former colonies, New Zealand is a constitutional monarchy. The British Monarch, Queen Elizabeth II of the United Kingdom, is the monarch of New Zealand. She appoints a governor general to represent her, but the governor general has little power. The legislation, prime minister, and Cabinet run the national government. Britain gave New Zealand a constitution in 1852, when it was a British colony. But through the years the New Zealand legislature has changed almost all its provisions. Today, the nation has no written constitution.

The first people who settled in New Zealand were a brown-skinned people called Maoris. They came from Polynesian islands located northeast of New Zealand. The country was discovered by Europeans in 1642, but they did not start to settle in the islands until the late 1700's. Today, most New Zealanders are descendants of the early European settlers. Maoris make up about 12% of the country's population. New Zealand has one of the highest standard of living in the world. For many years, the economy of the country depended largely on agriculture. Today agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries are all important to the economy. New Zealand's economy depends on trade with many countries -Australia, Britain, Japan and the United States.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---



### Flag

The New Zealand and Australian flags are very much alike. With the British flag in the top left-hand corner, the New Zealanders show the stars of the Southern Cross in red on a blue field.

### Vocabulary:

1. to lie - болу, жату
2. is situated - орналасқан
3. official language - мемлекеттік тіл
4. to appoint - тағайындау
6. to represent - орындау, көрсету

### Answer the questions:

1. Where is New Zealand situated?
2. What city is the capital of New Zealand?
3. What languages do people in New Zealand speak?
4. What is the official language in New Zealand?
5. Who is New Zealand's head of state?
6. Who runs the national government?
7. Who were the first people to live in New Zealand?
8. What are the main industries of the country?

### GRAMMAR:

#### The voice

(Етіс)

Етіс – қимылдың объекті мен субъектіге қатысын білдіретін етістіктің категориясы.

Қазақ тілінде етіс 4 түрге бөлінсе, ал ағылшын тілінде Active voice – негізгі етіс, Passive voice - ырықсыз (өзгелік) етіс



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

болып екіге бөлінеді. Active voice. Негізгі етіс зат немесе адамдардың өздері арқылы істелетін іс-қимылды білдіретін түбір етістіктің түрі: prepare- әзірле, come - жүр, go - кету, make -істе, жаса.

Passive voice. (Ырықсыз өзгелік етіс). Қимыл бөгде бір адам, субъект (зат) арқылы жасалатындығын білдіретін етістіктің түрі: - істелінеді, жасалады, әзірленеді.

a) Talgat built the house last month. - Талғат өткен айда үй салды.

The house was built (by Talgat) last month.- Үй өткен айда салынды. (Талғат арқылы).

Бірінші сөйлемде іс-қимылды орындаушы- субъект (Талғат) бастауыш болып, оның атқарған іс-қимылын built баяндауыш, негізгі етіс түрінде тұрып, the house (объект) толықтауыш қызметін атқарып тұр.

Ал екінші сөйлемде the house (объект) бастауыш болып, ал іс-қимылды атқарушы адам аталмай «by» предлогы толықтауыш арқылы беріліп (немесе by Talgat ), was built баяндауыш ырықсыз етіс түрінде қолданылып тұр.

b) The secretary receives the mail- Хатшы поштаны қабылдайды.

The mail is received by the secretary- Ырықсыз етіс. Пошта хатшы арқылы қабылданады.

### **Passive voice. Ырықсыз етіс.**

1. Әңгіме қимылдың жасаушыға қатысты емес, сол қимылдың өзі жайында болғандығын білдіргенде қолданылады.

The delivery terms are successfully discussed. - Жеткізу шарты ойдағыдай талқыланады.

2. Өтініш, уәде, рұқсат сұрауды білдіретін етістіктермен тіркесе қолданылады:

We were given a list of books for home reading.- Бізге үйде оқылатын әдебиеттердің тізімі берілді.

I was asked to call Mr Johnson. - Менің Джонсон мырзамен хабарласуымды өтінді.

3. Модаль етістіктерден кейін қолданылады:

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
He could be relied upon. - Оған сенім артылады.

Must, can (could), may (might), must модаль етістіктерінен кейін **be** етістігінің өзі қойылады. Мысалы: This book can be bought in any bookshop.

4. Егер қимыл бөгде біреу арқылы жасалса, қимылды жасаушы атау септігіндегі зат есім я есімдіктен болса, *by* предлогы қолданылады:

The mail is received by the secretary. - Пошта хатшы арқылы қабылданады.

The documents will be signed by the boss. - Құжаттарға бастықтың қолы қойылады.

The letter is written by pencil.- Хат қарындашпен жазылған.

Ағылшын тілінде ырықсыз етіс көмекші етістігі мен негізгі етістіктің өткен шақ есімшесінен (Past Participle) жасалады: **to be +Participle II** Баяндауыштың өзгеретін (to be көмекші етістігі) бөлігі тиісті шақта, жақта және жекеше, көпше тұлғада өзгеріске түседі де, негізгі етістік өзгеріссіз қалады.

Мысалы:

This work is finished. – Бұл жұмыс аяқталды.

Ырықсыз етісті сөйлемнің шақтары, сұраулы және болымсыз түрлері жай етісті сөйлемнің шақтарына,сұраулы және болымсыз түрлеріне сәйкес жасалады.

### Present Simple Passive voice

(Осы шақ ырықсыз етіс)

**to be (am, is, are) + ПII** (етістіктің III формасы)

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
The letter is written by my brother.	Is the letter written by my brother?	The letter is not written by my brother.

Active voice.

Passive voice

I clean my teeth every day.

My teeth **are cleaned** every day.

My brother sweeps the floor.

The floor **is swept** by my brother.

The letter is written by pencil.

Хат қарындашпен жазылған.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Past Simple Passive voice**

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
The letter was written by my brother	Was the letter written by my brother?	The letter was not written by my brother.

(Өткен шақ ырықсыз етіс)

**to be (was, were) + PII** ( етістіктің III формасы)

Active voice

Passive voice

The builders built this bridge last year. The bridge **was built** last year.

My mother cooked a cake for my birthday. The cake **was cooked** for my birthday.

Ырықсыз етістің қолданылу мағынасын мына сөйлемдерден аңғаруға болады:Мысалы:

Asanov built this bridge last year.

-Асанов көпірді былтыр салды.

The bridge was built (by Assanov) last year.

- Көпір былтыр салынды.

The house was built a month ago.

- Мына үй бір ай бұрын салынды.

**Future Simple Passive voice**

**shall, will +be + PII** ( етістіктің III формасы )

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
The room will be cleaned.	Will the room be cleaned?	The room won't be cleaned.

Мысалы: Келесі жазда біздің ауданда жаңа үй салынбақшы-  
A new house will be built in our district next summer.

**shall, will** аударылмайды, олар негізгі етістік келер шақта аударылатынын көрсетеді.

**be** аударылмайды, ол өзгелік етіс көрсеткіші.

Мысалы: The newspaper will be read.

Газетті оқиды. (келешекте)

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Ағылшын тілінде өзгелік етістегі сөйлемнің бастауышы атау септікте тұрады, ал қазақ тіліне аударғанда бастауыш егер зат есім болса, барыс септігімен беріледі.

### **With modal verbs must, can (could), may (might), to have**

You can buy this book in any shop.

*This book can be bought in any shop.*

I must learn the vocabulary.

*The vocabulary must be learnt by me.*

## **Writing**

### **Exercises**

#### **I. Put the sentences into: a) negative, b) interrogative.**

1. Our rooms are swept by my elder sister.
2. The coffee cups are washed by my mother.
3. The dog is taken for a walk by my brother.
4. The beds are made by my husband.
5. Fish is imported from Caspian Sea.
6. Flowers are sold in the shops and in the streets.

#### **II . Write the verbs in the Present simple Passive.**

1. English ... all over the world. (speak)
2. Cocoa ... to make chocolate. (use)
3. Datsun cars ... in Japan. (make)
4. In the factory the beans ... (clean) and ... (roast). Then they are ... into paste. (make)
5. Many trees... every year in spring. (plant)

#### **III . Put the following sentences in the Present Simple Passive.**

1. In my family my husband makes the beds.
2. These apples grow in Almaty.
3. They ask me my name and address.
4. People wish the newly married couple a long and happy life.
5. Our mother tells us children stories every evening.
6. In summer children often drive the horses to the field.
7. They water the flowers regularly.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**IV. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past simple Passive.**

1. Money and keys (to take) from coat pockets during the party.
2. A child (to hurt) .
3. Buildings (to damage).
4. The fruit ( to pick ) by students.
5. I (to ask) at the lesson yesterday.
6. I (to give) a very interesting book at the library last Friday.
7. This text (to translate) at the last lesson.

**V. Put the Following sentences into the Past Simple Passive.**

1. He asked me my name and address.
2. Someone told us a very funny story yesterday.
3. The people gave him a hearty welcome.
4. The secretary didn't tell me exact time of my appointment.
5. The builders built new houses.
6. Flowers sold in the shops and in the streets.

**VI. Open the brackets. Put the Following sentences into the Future Simple Passive.**

1. Nick (to send) to Astana next week.
2. This work (to do) tomorrow.
3. We (to invite) to a concert next Saturday.
4. Mushrooms (to gather) in spring.
5. His new book (to finish) next year.
6. The porter (bring) your luggage to your room.
7. A new pictures (to show) to children at the next lesson.

**VII. Translate into Kazakh.**

1. The letter will be written tomorrow.
2. Some friends will be invited next Sunday.
3. The test paper will be written by the student without mistakes.
4. In winter the fields will be covered by the snow.
5. The preparations will be finished tomorrow.
6. I will be invited to her dinner parties.
7. The office is cleaned every day.
8. Butter is made from milk.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. Oranges are imported from Britain.
10. How often are these rooms cleaned?
11. I am never invited to the parties.
12. Glass is made from sand.

### **VIII. Translate into English.**

1. Телеграмма ертең салынады.
2. Бұл үй келесі жексенбіде сатылады.
3. Шығарма келесі аптада жазылады.
4. Бұл студенттер қысқы семестрде басқа жатақханаға көшіріледі.
5. Біздің ауданға жаңа мектептер салынады.
6. Менің досымды шетелге жібереді.
7. Келесі аптада жоғарғы оқу орнына түсу емтиханы тапсырылады.

### **IX. Write the sentence in the interrogative and in the negative forms.**

1. Your luggage will be brought up in the lift.
2. You will be left your hat and coat in the cloak-room.
3. They will be taken straight to the hotel.
4. At the station they will be met by a man from the travel bureau.
5. She will be met them in the hall upstairs.
6. Tomorrow he will be taken them to the Museum.

### **X. Change the following sentences from Passive Voice into Active Voice.**

1. The book will be read.
2. These books will be published next year.
3. The date for our class picnic will be set.
4. They will be lectured.
5. The new film will be seen.
6. We shall be invited to the party.
7. The letter will be written.
8. All her life was devoted to the study of foreign languages.
9. Many letters are received by you every year.

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
10. I am sent to the South. 11. Many books are published in our country every year. 12. This problem is given much attention now.

## **Lesson 22**

### **Reading**

#### **Education in Kazakhstan**

Before going to school, children attend going kindergartens until they are six. Compulsory education begins in our country at the age of seven, when children go to primary school. Primary education lasts for 4 years. First they attend the children to nursery schools. In nursery schools the children don't have real classes. They play, learn numbers and how to add them. The children go to the primary school until ten. They have classes, read, write do mathematics. The school curriculum included such subjects as Kazakh, Maths, Russian, Drawing, Physical Training and Music. The secondary stage begins from the 5<sup>th</sup> form when children starts studying a lot of new subjects, such as Literature, History, natural Sciences and others. Besides secondary schools there are other types of schools in Kazakhstan. There are specialized secondary schools with intensive study of a certain subject, for example Foreign Languages, Literature, Physics and others.

There are also specialized art, music, ballet and sport schools for gifted children and special schools for handicapped children. Secondary education in our country is free of charge. Among secondary schools there are gymnasiums, colleges and lyceums most of them are private. The secondary schools together comprise eleven years of study. Nine years of classes is compulsory in our republic.

There are institutes, schools of higher education, universities and academies among higher educational institutions. In 1992 Kazakhstan system of higher education adopted the western model – a 4 years course of studies with getting the Bachelor degree after graduation and a – 2 years course of study with getting the Master's degree after graduation In order to enter a higher educational institution young people have to take an

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
entrance examination. Only those who successfully pass entrance testing are admitted free of charge. In order cases education is given on the commercial basis.

We know that government of the country has a programmer of reforming the system of education in our Republic and its responsible for the implementation of the reform programmed.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. primary school – бастауыш мектеп
2. secondary school – орта мектеп
3. intensive study – тереңдетілген білім
4. master's degree – магистр дәрежесі
5. free – тегін
6. to charge – беру
7. to be in charge of – қамқорлық ету
8. handicapped – мүгедек
9. gifted - дарынды
10. to adopt – үлгі алу

### **Answer the questions:**

1. When the children go to infant school?
2. How long does primary education last?
3. Private school is a new type of school in our country, isn't it?
4. What do children do in nursery schools?
5. When do children go to junior school?
6. What foreign language do they study at school?
7. When do they have holidays?



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**TEST**

**Put down the verbs in brackets into the Present, Past and Future Passive voice:**

1. This new dictionary (to sell) everywhere.
  - a) is sold
  - b) are sold
  - c) be sold
  - d) am sold
  - e) was sold
  
2. More cars (build) in Detroit area than anywhere else in the USA.
  - a) were built
  - b) is built
  - c) be built
  - d) built
  - e) are built
  
3. Every four years a new president (to elect) in the USA.
  - a) elected
  - b) are
  - c) is elected
  - d) be elected
  - e) was elected

4. Visitors (to allow) into the house and grounds between 9 a.m. and 5 p.m. every day.
  - a) allowed
  - b) be allowed
  - c) is allowed
  - d) are allowed
  
5. A bell (to ring) fifteen minutes before closing time.
  - a) is ring
  - b) are ring
  - c) is rang
  - d) be rang
  - e) was rang
  
- 6.. Visitors (to request) not to feed the animals.
  - a) are requested
  - b) is requested
  - c) am requested
  - d) be requested
  - e) were requested

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

7. People (to advise) not to  
live their cars while  
touring the safari park.

- a) advise
- b) be advised
- c) was advised
- d) is advised
- e) are advised

11. I (to give) a very  
interesting book at the  
library next Friday.

- a) is given
- b) was given
- c) were given
- d) are given
- e) will be given

8. The staff (not to permit)  
to accept tips.

- a) is not permitted
- b) are not permitted
- c) be not permitted
- d) not permitted
- e) was not permitted

12. I (to ask) at the lesson  
tomorrow.

- a) asked
- b) am asked
- c) was asked
- d) were asked
- e) shall be asked

9. Lunch (to serve) in the  
cafeteria from 11.10 to 2.30.

- a) served
- b) are served
- c) is served
- d) be served
- e) was served

13. This text (to translate)  
at the last lesson.

- a) are translated
- b) is translated
- c) was translated
- d) be translated
- e) were translated

10. The flowers (to water)  
every week.

- a) is watered
- b) are watered
- c) be watered
- d) was watered
- e) were watered

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

14. We (to invite) to a concert last Saturday.

- a) were invited
- b) was invited
- c) are invited
- d) be invited
- e) is invited

15. My question (to answer) tomorrow.

- a) are answered
- b) is answered
- c) were answered
- d) was answered
- e) will be answered

### Lesson 23

#### Reading

##### Our University

The institute was founded in 1944 to train young ladies who leave secondary schools in rural areas, especially those who come from distant villages. In the very beginning there were departments on philology, history, physics and mathematics with 200 students. We are very proud because M.Auezov, T.Tazhibaev, A.Margulan, A.Zhubanov, K.Karamisov, G.Kurmangaliev, K.Aimanov, M.Balakaev, E.Kostukhin, Z. Akhmetov, O.Baidildaev and other outstanding and famous scientists and statesmen who used to lecture at our institute. Zh. Shayakhmetov, N. Ondasinov, T.Mirzabekova and K.Kunantayeva made their valuable contributions to the establishment of the centre of science and education.

Since that time over fifty thousand people from various regions of the country graduated from the institute. Many of them are well-known in Kazakhstan. They are K. Kunantaeva PhD in pedagogics and professor, member of the National Academy of Science of Kazakhstan; Zh. Amerkhanova "the Hero of the Socialist Labour"; R.Nurtazina outstanding teacher; R.Markhatova, Z.Kadirova, A.Usmanova are public figures; U.Subkhanberdina, S.Uzakpaeva scientists; A.Baktigereeva famous poet; M.Eralieva famous singer and others.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

The institute faced a lot of difficulties from the moment of its foundation. The new period has new tasks for the institute. During last years education facilities were modernized. Five new departments and two preparatory sections were opened. Now there are more than forty programs and one thousand students at the institute.

The institute has its master, PhD programs, the Social Gender Research Institute and eight laboratories. There are 630 faculty members at the institute, including three members of the National Academy of Science of Kazakhstan, fifty-five professors and faculty members with PhD, 209 candidates of sciences (the Soviet standard degree) and assistant professors. There are also three people's artists of Kazakhstan, two honored artists, many winners of international and national competitions, two honored workers of Kazakhstan working at the institute.

The institute has bright and big academic buildings, dormitories, sport halls, the library equipped with computers that have Internet access, "Aktoty" national newspaper, laboratories having modern facilities. There are very good conditions in the canteen, the health centre, the disco hall and rest rooms. This is done to encourage students to study well and live a happy life. It should be mentioned that the institute has good moral and psychological environment. I am sure that the institute will educate highly qualified experts. While entering the 21st century our institute makes its contribution to development of national pedagogy, culture and science. There are many universities and institutes in Kazakhstan. But our institute is unique as it is only women's institute. We have three buildings for study and eight dormitories. The last dormitory is a new one. It was built in 2009. There is a large canteen in the centre of the campus. The status of university has been given to our institute in 2008.

### **Answer the questions :**

1. When was our institute established?
2. What famous scientist and outstanding figures did lecture at our institute?

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

3. Who graduated from the institute that many of them are well known in Kazakhstan?

**GRAMMAR**

**PRESENT CONTINUOUS PASSIVE**

**to be (am, is, are) +being +PII (етістіктің III формасы)**

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
The letter is being written by my brother.	Is the letter being written by my brother?	The letter is not being written by my brother.

Ann, who is being examined now.

Astana is being built in Kazakhstan.

- am, is, are аударылмайды. Олар етістіктің III-ші формасындағы негізгі етістік осы шақта аударылуы керек екенін көрсетеді.
- being аударылмайды. Ол негізгі етістікті өзгелік етісте аудару керек екенін көрсетеді. Continuous Passive үш құрамнан тұрады:
- Бірінші құрамы to be (am, is, are) негізгі етістіктің шағын және жағын көрсетеді.
- Екінші құрамы being - бұл өзгелік етістіктің көрсеткіші, барлық жақ үшін өзгермей осы қалыпта қалады.
- Үшінші құрамы етістіктің III –ші түрі, негізгі ойды беретін етістік

Мысалы :

The letter is being written now.

Хатты қазір жазып жатыр.

He is being built the house.

Оған үй салып жатыр.(қазір)

A new skating rink is being built  
in our country.

Біздің қалада жаңа

мұз айдыны салынып жатыр.

**Past Continuous Passive**

**to be (was, were) +being + PII (етістіктің III формасы)**

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
The letter was written by my brother.	Was the letter being written by my brother?	The letter was not being written by my brother.

While a fire was being made some tourists went to take a swim in the river.

I was being asked at the English lesson at this time yesterday.

**was, were** аударылмайды, олар негізгі етістіктің өткен шақта аударылуы керек екенін көрсетеді.

**being** аударылмайды, ол негізгі етістікті өзгелік етіске аудару керек екенін көрсетеді.

Мысалы:

The house was being built at that time.

Сол кезде оған үй салып жатқан.

The question was being discussed when I entered the room.

Мен бөлмеге кіргенде бұл сұрақ талқыланып жатты.

## Writing

### Exercises

#### I. Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences.

1. I can't use my office at the moment. It ... (paint).
2. We didn't go to the party. We ... (not invite).
3. The washing machine was broken but it's OK now. It .. (repair).
4. A factory is a place where things ... (make).
5. How old are these houses? When ... ( they / build)?
6. A: ... ( the computer / use) at the moment?  
B: Yes, Jim is using it.
7. The bridge is closed at the moment. It ... (damage) last week and it ... (not / repair) yet

#### II. Write the sentences in the active voice.

1. The office was being painted at that time.
2. The dress is being sewed.
3. He is being taught the French languages.
4. The book is being written for the third course.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. at that time the documents were being analyzed by him.
6. Trees are being planted now by population in the streets of the city.
7. This house was being observed several times.
8. The firm was being controlled by them.
9. He was being treated for heart attack at that time.

### III. Change from Active Voice into Passive Voice.

1. They wore cotton dresses.
2. The girls tidied the rooms.
3. They did the washing up.
4. She received the diploma of primary school teacher in 1998.
5. Mother taught the children to knit and sew.
6. They will do everything for you.
7. The parents must select books for their children.
8. She had to overcome many difficulties.
9. A group of students will write some articles for the new magazine.
10. The old woman was telling us interesting stories the whole evening.
11. They will finish their work tomorrow.
12. They can find all the necessary books in their school library.
13. At this moment the teacher is explaining new grammar rules.

### IV. Put down the sentences in the active voice.

*Somebody is painting **the door**. (Present Con. active) **The door** is being painted. (Present Con. passive)*

1. The car is being repaired.
2. Some new houses are being built opposite the park .
3. The office is being cleaned at the moment.
4. No football matches are being played next Saturday.
5. The room is being swept now.
6. The windows are being opened now.

### V. Write the sentences with modal verbs in the Passive.

1. You must do three of these exercises today.
2. You can find the book you need in any library.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

3. We must send these letters at once.
4. You can cross the river on a raft.
5. The workers can finish the building of the house very soon.
6. I can easily forgive this mistake.
7. You can find such berries everywhere.

### **VI. Give negative and interrogative forms and translate the sentences**

1. Many new buildings will be constructed in our town.
  2. Interesting reports are usually made by our teacher.
  3. The concert is enjoyed by us very much.
  4. The teacher was spoken to by the student.
  5. My little brother will be taken to the skating-rink by me.
  6. You were told about our party.
  7. The joke was laughed at by everybody.
- 

### **VII. Translate the sentences and put questions to them.**

1. Fruit trees are grown in the South of our country.
2. Heavy rains were reported in the South of France.
3. We don't like it when we are laughed at.
4. A man is born for happiness as a bird is for flight.
5. The doctor was sent for. 6. He was listened to attentively.
7. This microscope will be used for the study of snow particles.
8. This student will be asked at the next lesson.
9. Bread is cut with a knife.

---

### **VIII. Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:**

**clean, damage, find, give, invite, make, snow, make, show, steal, take**

1. The room ... every day.
2. I saw an accident yesterday. Two people ... to hospital.
3. Paper ... from wood.
4. There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms ... .
5. "Where did you get this picture?" "It ... to me by a friend of mine."
6. Many American programmes ... on British television.



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
7."Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?" "No. They ... but they didn't go."

8. How old is this film? It ... in 1965.

9. My car ... last week but the next day it ... by the police.

**IX . Translate into Kazakh .Change the following sentences from Passive Voice into Active Voice**

1. Wait a minute.

2.The document is being written for you.

3.These children are taught by my old teacher.

4.This interesting story was written by our student.

5.Thirty student are sitting in this room.

6.They are being taught English by a student of the University.

7. When I came in, the text was being read by our best student.

**X. . Change these sentences from Active Voice into Passive Voice**

1.The teacher corrects our exercises.

2.He left his bag on the desk.

3.Everybody will see this film soon.

4.The teacher returned our written works to us.

5.He bought this book yesterday.

6. A loud noise frightened us.

7. Lightning struck the house.

8.He tore the letter into small pieces.

9.We reached the top of the mountain in the evening.

## **Lesson 24**

### **Reading**

#### **Education in Great Britain.**

##### **Nursery Education (under 5 years)**

Children do not have to go to school until they reach the age of five, but there is some free nursery- school education before that age.

Nursery schools are staffed with teachers and students in training.

There are all kinds of toys to keep the children busy from 9 o'clock in the morning till 4 o'clock in the afternoon – while their parents are at work. Here the babies play, lunch and sleep. They can run about and play in safety with someone keeping an eye on them.

##### **Primary Education (5 to 11 years)**

Primary education takes place in infant schools (pupils aged from 5 to 7 years) and junior schools (from 8 to 11 years). Some LEAs have a different system in which middle schools replace junior schools and take pupils aged from 9 to 12 years. The 8 children go from the infant school to the junior school. This marks the transition from play to 'real work'. The children have set periods of arithmetic, reading and composition. History, Geography, Nature Study, Art and Music, Physical Education, Swimming are also on the timetable.

Pupils are streamed according to their abilities to learn into A, B, C, and LEA – Local Education Authority.

##### **Secondary Education (11 to 16/18 years)**

Since the 1944 Education Act of Parliament, free secondary education has been available to all children in Britain. Indeed, children must go to school until the age of 16, and pupils may stay on for one or two years more if they wish. Secondary schools are usually much larger than primary schools and most children – over 80 per cent – go to a comprehensive school at the age of 11. These schools are not selective – you don't have to pass an exam to go there. In 1965 the Labour Government introduced the policy of comprehensive education. Before that time, all children took an exam at the age of 11 called the "11+". Approximately the top 20 per cent were chosen to go the academic grammar schools. Those who failed the "11+" (80 per cent) went to secondary modern schools.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

A lot of people thought that this system of selection at the age of 11 was unfair on many children. So, comprehensive schools were introduced to offer suitable courses for pupils of all abilities. Some LEAs started to change over to comprehensive education immediately, but some were harder to convince and slower to act. There are a few LEAs who still keep the old system of grammar schools, but most LEAs have now changed over completely to nonselective education in comprehensive schools. Comprehensive schools want to develop the talents of each individual child. So they offer a wide choice of subjects, from art and craft, woodwork and domestic sciences, modern languages, computer studies, etc. All these subjects are enjoyed by both boys and girls. Pupils at comprehensive schools are quite often put into “sets” for the more academic subjects such as mathematics or languages. Sets are formed according to ability in each subject, so that for example the children in the highest set for math will not necessarily be in the highest set for French. All pupils move to the next class automatically at the end of the year.

### **Answer the questions:**

1. At what ages must British children stay at school?
2. What stages in British education divided into?
3. What types are state schools divided into?
4. What can you say about private school?
5. State does not control private school, does it?
6. What do many people do after leaving school?

### **Vocabulary:**

1. staff – қамтамасыз ету
2. approximately – шамамен
3. unfair- әділетсіз
4. nonselective – сұрыпталмаған
5. remain – сақталу
6. complicated – күрделенген

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**Put down the verbs in the  
bracket in the Present and  
Past Progressive Passive.**

1. My question to the teacher  
(to answer) now.
  - a) is answering
  - b) are answering
  - c) is being answered
  - d) answer
  - e) to answer
2. Hockey (to play) by the  
children in our school.
  - a) is being played
  - b) played
  - c) are playing
  - d) to play
  - e) will play
3. Mushrooms (to gather) by  
us in the wood.
  - a) together
  - b) gathers
  - c) are gathering
  - d) are being gathered
  - e) will gather
4. Flowers (to sell) in shops  
and in the streets.
  - a) are selling
  - b) sold
  - c) is selling
  - d) sell

**TEST**

- e) are being sold
5. The porter (to bring) your  
luggage to your room.
  - a) brings
  - b) to bring
  - c) is being brought
  - d) is bringing
  - e) brought
6. Your luggage (to bring)  
up in the lift.
  - a) bring
  - b) is being brought
  - c) is bringing
  - d) to bring
  - e) brings
7. From the station they (to  
take) straight to the hotel.
  - a) are straighten
  - b) are taking
  - c) are being taken
  - d) took
  - e) is taking
8. At the station they (to  
meet) by a man from the  
travel bureau.
  - a) are being met
  - b) are meeting
  - c) is meeting
  - d) met
  - e) to meet

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

9. She (to invite) to the theatre last week.

- a) was being invited
- b) is invited
- c) was invited
- d) is inviting
- e) are invited

10. When I came to the theatre my friend (to wait) far me.

- a) waited
- b) is waiting
- c) are waiting
- d) was being waited
- e) are being wait

11. We (to skate) for two hours and more.

- a) are skating
- b) is skating
- c) skated
- d) skates
- e) were being skated

12. When I opened the door my friends (to sit) around the table.

- a) were being sat
- b) sat
- c) sit
- d) are sitting
- e) is sitting

13. Lena (to sweep) the floor from eleven till twelve on Sunday.

- a) swept
- b) is sweeping
- c) are sweeping
- d) was being swept
- e) were sweeping

14. When they (to sail) down the river, they saw a little island.

- a) sail
- b) sails
- c) were being sailed
- d) is sailing
- e) are sailing

15. At half past four yesterday we (to have) dinner.

- a) had
- b) are having
- c) is having
- d) have
- e) were being had

## **Lesson 25**

### **Reading**

#### **Oxbridge**

There are more than thirty Universities in Great Britain. The biggest University of all Modern English Universities is London University. The oldest English Universities are Oxford and Cambridge. Oxford was founded (негізі қаланған) in the 12<sup>th</sup> century as an aristocratic University and it remains aristocratic to the present day. Very few children from the working class can afford to study there as the cost of studies is very high. Students have to pay for everything-for using books, libraries, laboratories, for taking examinations, etc.(to remain – қалу; cost-құн). Oxford's organization is very complicated. In fact the University is a collection of Colleges. There are 32 colleges in Oxford: 27 colleges for men and 5 colleges for women. Each college is a world of its own which gives its students a specialized training in arts, law, medicine, science, etc. The largest college has 500 students, the smallest college -100 students. The University is an administrative centre which arranges (= organizes) lectures for all students of the colleges, holds examinations and gives degree. (Complicated – қиын, arts – гуманитарлық ғылымдар, law – заң, құқық, юриспруденция, degree – дәреже). Oxford and Cambridge have a tutorial system of education and this is one of the ways in which Oxford and Cambridge differ from other English Universities. Every student has a tutor (= teacher) who plans his work and discusses it with the student after he has done it. Every student must see his tutor regularly and tell him everything about his studies. They discuss student's work, papers and essays which every student has to write and to submit to his tutor. They discuss different scientific and social problems. This system of education has some advantages; it brings a student into personal contact with his tutor. (To differ – ерекшелену, көзге түсу, advantage – артықшылық). The academic year in England has three terms; each term lasts from eight to ten weeks. Terminal examinations take place at the end of autumn, spring and summer terms. Final examinations take place at the end the course of studies. If a study

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
fails in an examination, he may be allowed to take the exam again. But only two re-examinations are usually allowed. (terminal - семестрлік).

### Vocabulary:

1. to be over – аяқталу, біту, тоқтату
2. to continue – жалғастыру
3. to lecture – дәріс оқу
4. the Cambridge University – Кембридж университеті
5. the Royal Society – Британ ғылым академиясы.
6. at an early age- ерте жаста

### Answer the questions:

1. How do British schools and universities differ from schools and universities in your country?
2. What do you like and dislike about the British system?
3. Write a similar account of a typical day in your school or institute

## GRAMMAR

### The Present Perfect Passive.

(Аяқталған осы шақ ырықсыз етіс)

**has, have + been + ПII** ( етістіктің III формасы)

Ағылшын тілінде ырықсыз етіс аяқталған осы шақта мынадай мағынаны білдіреді,

Мысалы: Келісім шартқа қол қойылды. – The contract has been signed.

Қазақ тіліне қарағанда ағылшын тілінде ырықсыз етіс көбірек қолданылады.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
Helen has been to New York twice.	Has Helen been to New York twice?	Helen has not been to New York twice.

# BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

## The Past Perfect Passive

**had + been + PII** (етістіктің III формасы)

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
The report had been written by 6 o'clock.	Had the report been written by 6 o'clock?	The report had not been written by 6 o'clock

He had seen before he came here. Мен оны бұл жерге келмей тұрып көрдім.

I had been invited to the party at 7 o'clock . Мен сағат 7- ге отырысқа шақырылдым.

The report had been written by 6 o'clock. Баяндама сағат 6-да жазылып болған.

Passive voice-та қимыл иесі **by** көмекші сөзімен, ал қимыл әрекеттің құралы **with** көмекші сөзімен қолданылады. Осы көмекші сөздермен қолданылатын зат есімдер мен есімдіктер көмектес септік арқылы аударылады.

The letter had been sent by Mr. Brown.

- Хат Браун мырзамен жіберілді.

The arrival card had been filled in with the pen.

- Келу карточкасы қаламмен толтырылды.

## Writing

### Exercises

#### I. Write the sentence in the Present Perfect Passive.

1. By 3 o'clock everything ... .. (prepare).
2. The papers ... .. (to look) through and corrected by the next lesson.
3. ... all these books ... .. (to read)?
4. The letter ... just ... (to type).
5. He ... .. (to tell) everything, so he knows what to do now . 6. The new time-table ... not yet ... (to hang).

#### II. Translate into English.

1. Жарық сөндірілген жоқ.
2. Мына кітаптар оқылды ма?
3. Есік ашық қалдырылды.
4. Мына тауға ешқашанда ешкім шыға алмаған.



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

5. Әдемі суретті біреу алған ба?
6. Хат жазылып бітті ме?
7. Оны папасы вокзалда күтіп алды.
8. Көп кітаптар кітапханаға әкелінді.
9. Мына алмалар қазір ғана бақшадан әкелінді.
10. Бізге концертке баруға билет берілді.

### **III. Translate into Kazakh and put down special questions.**

1. This mountain has never been climbed before.
2. Why have these cups been put here in this cupboard?
3. Nick has been told to do home at once when I gave him the things.
4. Have your composition been handed in?
5. The story has been forgotten.

### **IV. Change the following sentences from active to passive voice and say in what tense is each sentence.**

1. Somebody calls the president every day.
2. John is calling the other members.
3. Martha was delivering the documents to the department.
4. The other members have repealed the amendment.
5. The delegates had received the information before the recess.
6. The teacher should buy the supplies for this class.
7. Somebody will call Mr. Watson tonight.
8. The fire has caused considerable damage.
9. The company was developing a new procedure before the bankruptcy hearings began .
10. John will have received the paper by tomorrow.

### **V. Put in the correct forms or write what has happened in the passive.**

1. ( the office/ clean)
2. ( the shirts / iron)
3. ( the window / break)
4. ( the roof / repair)
5. ( the car damage)
6. ( the houses / knock / down)

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

7. ( the trees / cut / down)

8. ( they / invite / to a party)

**VI. Model:***If I took the book yesterday, then the book was taken (by me) yesterday.*

If I borrowed a book, then the book ... .

If you did some work, then the work ... .

If you write a letter, then the letter ... .

If I take a book tomorrow, then the book ... .

If we learn our lesson, then ... .

If you wrote the letter yesterday, then ... .

### **VII . Change from Active Voice into Passive Voice**

He has given some medicine to the child. Father has sent for the doctor. I had left my laboratory by 5 o'clock. I shall read this book. I shall have finished this experiment before the bell rings.

### **VIII. Change the following sentences from Passive Voice into Active Voice**

1. Great Britain is separated from the European continent by the North Sea and the English Channel.

2. England was called Albion by Julius Caesar because of the white cliffs on the English coast near Dover. ("Alba" means "white" in Latin).

3. The ground is covered with snow in winter.

4. The way to that pavilion will be indicated by special signs.

5. The French language was brought to England by the Normans.

### **IX. It's a place where you can swim. - *A swimming pool.***

It's a person who drives a taxi.

It's a thing which takes photos.

It's a place where you can buy stamps.

It's a person who looks after your teeth.

It's a thing which you use to cut food. (a knife, a dentist, a post office, a camera, a taxi driver)

**X. Active Voice or Passive Voice**

1. John ... that letter (to write).
2. This book ... by A. Kunanbayev (to write).
3. The boy ... some snow (to compress).
4. When snow ... it can crush buildings (to compress).
5. Snow ... the seeds from freezing (to keep).
6. Liquids ... to vessels (to keep).
7. Many beautiful plants ... in our country (to grow).
8. Still more plants and flowers ... in future (to grow).
9. I ... your help (to need).
10. Your help ... tomorrow (to need).

**Lesson 26**

**Reading**

**The Educational System of the USA**

There are three basic levels in the US educational system – elementary school, which usually goes from kindergarten to sixth grade; junior high school, from seventh through eighth or ninth grade; and high school, from ninth or tenth through twelfth grade. Children are required to be in school from the age of 7 through 16. About 90 percent of all children attend public school which is free. The remaining 10 percent go to private school, which often are associated with a religion. About half of all private schools are Catholic. In the United States, education is mainly the responsibility of state and local governments, rather than the national government. The amount of money spent on education varies considerably from state to state. The subjects studied also vary somewhat. The school year usually runs from September to June. At the high school level there are some specialized schools, including schools that emphasize vocational subjects like business or auto mechanics. Most high schools, however, are general schools. High school offers – for example, in drama clubs, sports teams, or the school newspaper.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

### **Advanced schooling**

Many students, upon finishing high school, choose to continue their education. Community colleges, also known as junior colleges, offer two – year programs. They are public schools and the tuition costs are usually low. Colleges and universities have four- year programs leading to a bachelor’s degree (as well as, in many cases, further programs leading to higher degrees). These schools may be public or private; private schools cost a lot more. US colleges and Universities have many students from around the world, especially from Asia.

### **Trends in Education**

Many more Americans than ever before are finishing high school and college. More than 20 percent of all adults have finished college, and more than 75 percent have finished high school. Although the number of years of schooling is going up, there are signs that the quality of education may be going down. This is of great concern, especially since education is considered crucial to the American ideal that each person should achieve all that he or she can. There are many theories about where the problems lie. Some think that students have too many “electives”, or courses they choose, and too few courses in basic subjects. Others think students watch too much TV and do too little homework. Everyone agrees the problems must be addressed.

### **Vocabulary:**

1. remaining - қалған
2. private - жеке меншік
3. responsibility - жауапкершілік
4. amount - барлығы
5. considerably - көп, мол
6. emphasize - айрықша мән беру
7. adult - ер жеткен, үлкен
8. concern - қатысты болу
9. crucial - шешуші
10. elective - таңдау

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Writing**

**TEST**

1. I ( to ask) today.
  - a) have been asked
  - b) has been asked
  - c) ask
  - d) asked
  
2. She (to dress) when he entered the room.
  - a) had been dressed
  - b) has been dressed
  - c) have been dressed
  - d) dressed
  
3. Write the sentence in the passive.  
She has written the letter.
  - a) The letter is written.
  - b) The letter was written.
  - c) The letter has been written.
  - d) The letter had been written.
  
4. Write the sentence in the passive.  
I had translated the article by 6 o'clock.
  - a) The article was translated by 6 o'clock.
  - b) The article is translated by 6 o'clock.
  - c) The article has been translated by 6 o'clock.
  - d) The article had been translated by 6 o'clock.
  
5. Many books by Dickens (to read) by me.
  - a) have been read
  - b) has been read
  - c) read
  - d) is read
  
6. Much useful work (to do) by us on Sunday.
  - a) had been done
  - b) has been done
  - c) is done
  - d) are done
  
- 7) Write the sentence in the passive.  
You have done this exercise well.
  - a) This exercise has been done well.
  - b) This exercise have been done well.
  - c) This exercise is done well.
  - d) This exercise are done well.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

8. Write the sentence in the active.  
The lecturer had been listened to with great attention.  
a) Everybody had listened to the lecturer with great attention.  
b) Everybody listened to the lecturer with great attention.  
c) Everybody is listened to the lecturer with great attention.  
d) Everybody was listened to the lecturer with great attention.
9. The nice flowers (to bring) by Kate.  
a) have been brought  
b) has been brought  
c) is brought  
d) was brought
10. Books (to become) part of our life, they are true friends and helpers of people.  
a) has been  
b) has been become  
c) have been become  
d) is become
11. My homework (to do) and I'm completely free.  
a) has been done  
b) have been done  
c) is done  
d) was done
12. Nick (to see) by me a week before.  
a) has been seen  
b) had been seen  
c) have been seen  
d) is been seen
13. By twelve o'clock yesterday all my work (to finish).  
a) has been finished  
b) is finished  
c) are finished  
d) had been finished
14. The mountain (to climb) by the young tourist by noon.  
a) had been climbed  
b) has been climbed  
c) is climbed  
d) are climbed
15. We (to invite) to the party by 5 o'clock.  
a) had been invited  
b) has been invited  
c) is invited  
d) are invited

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Grammar Tables  
**INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES**

Сұраулы сөйлем  
**General questions**  
Жалпы сұрақ

Auxiliary or Modal Verb (Көмекші/модаль етістік)	Subject (Бастауыш)	Predicate (Баяндауыш)	Object (Тольқтауыш)	Attribute (Анықтауыш)	Adverbial modifier (Пысықтауыш)
Do Does	you she, he	know go	English to the university	well? -	- every day?
Did	they	work	in the garden	Hard	yesterday?
Can Must	he I	speak read	French? all books	- -	- tomorrow ?
Are (Is)	you (he, she)	waiting	for him	so long?	-
Have (has)	you (he, she)	-	any brother or sister	-	in your family?
Shall (will)	we, I (you, he, she)	Go	to the theatre	Early	tomorrow ?

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

.....

**Special questions**

Арнайы сұрақ

Interrogative Pronouns (Сұрау есімдігі)	Auxilar y or Modal verb (Көмек ші/мод аль егістік)	Subject (Бастау ыш)	Predicate (Баяндау ыш)	Object (Толықтау ыш)	Adverbial modifier (Пысықтау ыш)
What	are	you	reading?	-	-
When	do	you	get up?	-	-
Why	does	he	want	to go	there?
How	do	you	manage	it,	-
Where	shall	we	meet	Leonard?	tomorrow?
Who	are	they	talking	-	-
Whose book	will	the students	discuss	with?	next week?
How	do	you	go	-	to home?
Why	did	he	late	to the lesson	yesterday?

**Alternative questions**

Альтернативті сұрақ

Бастауышқа қойылатын альтернативті сұрақ	Will Marat or Samat be our guide in Almaty?
Баяндауышқа қойылатын альтернативті сұрақ	Are you reading or writing a letter?
Сөйлемнің біріңғай мүшелеріне қойылатын альтернативті сұрақ	Does he speak English or French?



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**Disjunctive questions**

Айырма сұрақ

<b>Болымды хабарлы</b>	<b>Болымсыз сұраулы</b>
Shakespeare is an English writer,	isn't he?
He speaks English very well,	doesn't he?
You have been to St.Petersburg,	haven't you?
Jim is talking to his teacher,	isn't he?
They have many friends in Astana,	haven't they?
We shall go to the theatre tonight,	shan't we?
You will be back soon,	won't you?
Alice wrote a letter	didn't she?
<b>Болымсыз сөйлем</b>	<b>Сұраулы сөйлем</b>
She is not a student,	is she?
He doesn't speak French,	does he?
I should not have written,	should I?
He didn't read the novel,	did he?
We don't come to the lesson,	do we?
He won't sing a song,	will, he?
They haven't write a dictation,	have they?

**ADVERBS OF TIME**

Мезгіл үстеу

How often?

never, seldom (rarely), sometimes, often, usually, always, ever

How many times?

once a day, twice a month, three times a year...

every day, every other day, every three months...

hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly

**yet**

Aren't you ready **yet**?

Сен әлі дайын емессің бе?

Have you finished? - Not **yet**.

Сен біттің бе? - Жоқ әлі.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**still**

**Do you still** go to school? Сен әлі мектепке барып жүрсің бе?  
He is **still** a strong man. Ол әлі мықты.

**Not... any more/longer**

He doesn't work here **any more**. Ол бұл жерде бұдан былай жұмыс істемейді.  
I can't wait here **longer**. Мен сені бұдан артық күте алмаймын.

**WORD FORMATION**

Сөз тудырушы жұрнақтар (Суффикстер)

Сөз таптары	Суффикс	Сөздердің жасалуы
<b>The Noun</b>	-ance (-ence)	to perform — performance
Зат есім	-er	to work — worker
	-ing	to build — building
	-(t) ion	to decorate — decoration
	-ism	social — socialism
	-ist	social — socialist
	-(i) ty	active — activity
	-ness	happy — happiness
	-ment	to develop — development
<b>The Adjective</b>	-able (-ible)	to enjoy — enjoyable
Сын есім	-an (-ian)	Russia — Russian
	-ant (-ent)	to differ — different
	-al	continent — continental
	-ful	help — helpful
	-ic	hero — heroic
	-ish	yellow — yellowish
	-ive	to act — active
	-less	help — helpless
	-ous	mountain — mountainous

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

	-y	rain — rainy
<b>The Verb</b> Етістік	-ize (-ise) – en	to organize (organise) less — to lessen
<b>The Adverb</b> Үстеу	-ly	nice — nicely

**PARTS OF SPEECH**

Сөз таптары

The Noun	Зат есім
The Adjective	Сын есім
The Numeral	Сан есім
The Pronoun	Есімдік
The Verb	Етістік
The Adverb	Үстеу
The Preposition	Предлог
The Conjunction	Шылау
The Interjection	Одағай

**THE SENTENCE**

Сөйлем

The Simple sentence	Жай сөйлем
Unextended sentence	Жалаң сөйлем
Extended sentence	Жайылма сөйлем
Finite forms of the sentence	Жақты сөйлем
Non finite forms of the sentence	Жақсыз сөйлем
Parts of the sentence	Сөйлем мүшесі
Primary Parts of the sentence	Тұрлаулы сөйлем мүшесі
The Subject	Бастауыш
The Predicate	Баяндауыш
Secondary Parts of the sentence	Тұрлаусыз сөйлем мүшесі
The Object	Толықтауыш
The Attribute	Анықтауыш
The Adverbial Modifier	Пысықтауыш

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**PUNCTUATION MARKS**

Тыныс белгілері

The Comma	Үтір
The Semicolon	Нүктелі үтір
The Colon	Қос нүкте
The Full Stop	Нүкте
The Note of Interrogation	Сұрау белгісі
The Note of Exclamation	Леп белгісі
The Inverted Commas	Тырнақша
The Apostrophe	Апостроф
The Hyphen	Сызықша. Дефис.
The Bracket	Жақша
The Capital	Бас әріп

**Antonym**

Bad	Good
Beautiful	Ugly
Big	Little
Big	small
Cheap	expensive
Clean	Dirty
Cold	Hot
Cool	warm
Dangerous	Safe
Dark	Light
Deep	shallow
Difficult	simple
Dry	Wet
Early	Late
Empty	Full
Fast	Slow
Fat	Thin
First	Last
Happy	Sad
Hard	Easy

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

Hard	Soft
Healthy	Ill
Healthy	Sick
Heavy	Light
High	Low
Intelligent	stupid
Large	Little
Large	small
Long	short
Modern	old-fashioned
Narrow	Wide
Noisy	quiet
Old	New
Poor	Rich
Private	public
Right	Left
Right	wrong
Short	Tall
Sour	sweet
Strong	weak

**DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVE**

Туынды сын есім

Un-,in-,dis-,il-, im-,ir-,ab- префикстері

Able	Unable
Accurate	Inaccurate
Certain	Uncertain
Clear	Unclear
Comfortable	uncomfortable
Common	Uncommon
Complete	Incomplete
Convenient	Inconvenient
Dependent	Independent
Direct	Indirect
Expensive	Inexpensive

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

Fair	Unfair
Familiar	Unfamiliar
Happy	Unhappy
Healthy	Unhealthy
Honest	Dishonest
Important	Unimportant
Interesting	Uninteresting
Kind	Unkind
Lawfull	Unlawfull
Legal	Illegal
Logical	Illogical
Loyal	Disloyal
Mobile	Immobile
Necessary	Unnecessary
Normal	Abnormal
Pleasant	Unpleasant
Polite	Impolite
Possible	Impossible
Proper	Improper
Rational	Irrational
Real	Unreal
Reliable	Unreliable
Regular	Irregular
Responsible	Irresponsible
Secure	Insecure
Sure	Unsure
True	Untrue
Usual	Unusual
Visible	Invisible

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

.....

**Forms of voice**

	<b>The Tenses</b>	<b>Active voice</b>	<b>Passive voice</b>
<b>Indefinite</b>	Present Simple	<b>V-I (he, she, it – V+s, es)</b> I (we,you, they) see her every day. He (she, it) sees her every day.	to be (am, is, are) + <b>V-III</b> She is seen by me every day. She is seen by him every day.
	Past Simple	<b>V-II</b> I saw her yesterday.	(was, were) + <b>V-III</b> She was seen by me yesterday
	Future Simple	(shall, will) + <b>V-I</b> I shall see her tomorrow.	(shall be, will be) + <b>VIII</b> She will be seen by me tomorrow.
	Future in the Past	(should, would) + <b>V-I</b> She said that she would see her the next day.	should be, would be + <b>V-III</b> She said that she would be seen the next day.
<b>Continuous</b>	Present Continuous	to be (am, is, are) + <b>V-IV</b> I am seeing her now.	(am being, is being, are being) + <b>VIII</b> She is being seen by me now.
	Past Continuous	(was, were) + <b>V-IV</b> I was seeing her at 4 o'clock yesterday.	(was being, were being) + <b>V-III</b> She was being seen by me at 4 o'clock yesterday.
	Future Continuous	(will be, shall be) + <b>V-IV</b> I shall be seeing her at 5 o'clock tomorrow.	_____
	Future in the Past	(would be, should be) + <b>V-IV</b> She said that she would be seeing her at 5 o'clock the next day.	_____

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

<b>Perfect</b>	Present Perfect	(have, has) + <b>V- III</b> I have already seen her.	(have been, has been) + <b>V- III</b> She has been already seen by me.
	Past Perfect	had + <b>V- III</b> I had seen her by 5 o'clock yesterday.	had been + <b>V- III</b> She had seen by me by 5 o'clock yesterday.
	Future Perfect	will have, shall have + <b>V- III</b> I shall have seen her by 5 o'clock tomorrow.	shall have been, will have been + <b>V- III</b> She will have been seen by 5 o'clock tomorrow.
	Future in the past	would have, should have + <b>V-III</b> I should have seen her by 5 o'clock next day.	should have been, would have been + <b>V-III</b> She would have been seen by 5 o'clock the next day.
<b>Perfect Continuous</b>	Present Perfect Continuous	have been, has been + <b>V- IV</b> I have been seeing her since morning.	_____ _____
	Past Perfect Continuous	had been + <b>V- IV</b> I had been seeing her for two hours when you came.	_____ _____
	Future Perfect Continuous	shall have been, will have been + <b>V - IV</b> I shall have been seeing her for two hours when you come.	_____ _____
	Future in the Past	should have been, would have been + <b>V- IV</b> I should have been seeing her for two hours when you came.	_____ _____



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**FAMILY**

Жанұя

<b>English</b>	<b>Kazakh</b>
1. a little boy/girl	кішкентай бала
2. a middle aged person	орта жастағы адам
3. a new born baby	жаңа туылған бала
4. a person advanced in years	орта жастағы адам
5. a person getting on in years	егде жастағы адам
6. a teenager	Жасөспірім
7. a toddler	Балдырған
8. an adult	Ересек
9. aunt	әкесінің не шешесінің әпке / қарындасы
10. bachelor	Бойдақ
11. bride	Қалыңдық
12. bridegroom	күйеу жігіт
13. bridesmaid	қалыңдықтың досы
14. bridesman, best man	күйеу жігіттің досы
15. brother	аға, іні
16. cousin	немере аға іні, бөле
17. daughter	Қыз
18. divorced	Айрылысқан
19. engaged	Атастырылған
20. ex husband	айрылысқан күйеуі
21. ex wife	бұрынғы әйелі
22. families	жанұяның мүшелері
23. father	Әке
24. father in law	қайын ата
25. fiance	күйеу жігіт
26. fiancee	Қалыңдық
27. friend	Дос
28. grandchild	немере
29. granddaughter	немере қыз
30. grandfather	Ата
31. grandmother	апа , әже

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

32. grandparent (s)	ата және апа
33. grandson	Немере
34. great grandchild	Шөбере
35. marriage	Неке
36. married	Үйленген
37. mother	Ана
38. mother in law	Ене
39. matchmakers	кұда құдағи
40. nephew	жиен бала
41. newly weds	жас жұбайлар
42. niece	жиен қыз
43. nurse	Күтуші
44. orphan	Жетім
45. parents	ата ана
46. relative	Туыс
47. single	Бойдақ
48. sister	апа (әпке)
49. son	Ұл
50. son in law	күйеу бала
51. step daughter	өгей қыз
52. step father	өгей әке
53. step mother	өгей шеше
54. the only child	жалғыз бала
55. to adopt	асырап алу
56. to be born	туылу, дүниеге келу
57. to be of age	кәмелетке толу
58. to bring up	Тәрбиелеу
59. to die	өмірден өту
60. to divorce	Айрылысу

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

61. to get married	Үйлену
62. to relate	ағайынды болу
63. to take after	біреуге ұқсау
64. twin	Егіздер
65. twin brother	ағайынды егіздер
66. twin sister	әпкелі сіңлілі егіздер
67. uncle	ағай, нағашы
68. wedding	үйлену тойы
69. widow	жесір әйел
70. wife	Әйел

**SCHOOL**

Мектеп

<b>English</b>	<b>Kazakh</b>
1. board	Тақта
2. book/textbook	Оқулық
3. bookshelf	кітап сөресі
4. break	Үзіліс
5. chalk	Бор
6. chemistry	Химия
7. curriculum	оқу жоспары
8. drawing	Сурет
9. duster	Шүберек
10. education	Білім
11. eraser	Өшіргіш
12. foreign (modern) languages	шетел тілдері
13. form/class/grade	класс, сынып
14. geography	география
15. globe	глобус, шар

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

16. head teacher	оқу ісінің меңгерушісі
17. headmaster/headmistress	директор
18. history	Тарих
19. homework	үй жұмысы
20. lesson	Сабақ
21. map	Карта
22. mark	Баға
23. math /mathematics	Математика
24. music	Музыка
25. notebook	Блокнот
26. pen	Қаламсап
27. pencil	Қарындаш
28. physical education	дене шынықтыру
29. physics	Физика
30. pupil/student	Оқушы
31. quiz/test	бақылау жұмысы
32. school uniform	мектеп формасы
33. term/semester	Семестр
34. timetable	сабақ кестесі

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**CLOTHES**

Киім кешек

<b>English</b>	<b>Kazakh</b>
1. blouse	Кофта
2. boots	бәтіңке; етік
3. boxer shorts	ер адамның іш киімі
4. Bra	әйел адамның іш киімі
5. Button	Түйме
6. Cap	бас киім
7. Coat	Пальто
8. Collar	Жаға
9. Cotton	Мақта
10. Denim	джинсы мата
11. Dress	Көйлек
12. footwear	аяқ киім
13. fur	Жүн
14. fur coat	Тон
15. gloves	Қолғап
16. headgear	бас киім
17. high heels	биік өкшелі туфли
18. jacket	Күрте
19. jeans	Джинсы
20. jogging suit	спорт костюмі
21. jumper	Джемпер
22. jumpsuit	Комбинезон
23. Knickers	әйелдің іш киімі
24. Leather	Тері
25. Leotard	Трико
26. long-sleeved shirt	ерлерге арналған көйлек

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

27. mini-skirt	қысқа-юбка
28. mittens	Қолғап
29. nylon	Нейлон
30. pair of pyjamas	жатар алдында киетін иім
31. panties	іш киімдер
32. pants	ерлер іш киімі
33. pattern	Өрнек
34. plain	бір түсті
35. pocket	Қалта
36. pullover; am. Sweater	пуловер, свитер
37. pumps	өкшесіз туфли
38. raincoat, waterproof (coat)	Плащ
39. rubber	Резина
40. scarf	Шарф
41. shirt	ер көйлегі
42. shoes	Туфли
43. shorts	қысқа шалбар
44. silk	шай мата
45. skirt	Юбка
46. sleeve	Жең
47. slip	іш көйлек
48. slippers	Тәпішке
49. socks	нәски
50. strap; belt	Белдік
51. striped	Ала
52. trousers; am. pants	Шалбар

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
**DWELLING**

Үй

1. apartment	Пәтер
2. apartment house	көп пәтерлі үй
3. back door	артқы есік
4. balcony/terrace	қылтима
5. buzzer	қоңырау
6. cottage	жеке жай
7. doorbell	есік қоңырауы
8. dormitory	жатақхана
9. elevator/lift	жеделсаты
10. farmhouse	фермер үйі
11. fire alarm	өртке қарсы дабыл
12. flat	пәтер
13. front door	алдыңғы есік
14. garage	машина қоятын орын
15. garbage chute	қоқыс өткізгіш
16. garden	бақша
17. hostel	жатақхана
18. house	үй
19. intercom	домофон
20. kitchen garden	бау бақша
21. lamppost	шам
22. mailbox	пошта ящигі
23. parking garage	жер асты гаражы
24. roof	шатыр
25. summer cottage	саяжай
26. swimming- pool	бассейн
27. window	терезе
28. window screen	терезе жапқыш
29. yard	аула

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

**BEDROOM**

Жатын бөлме

<b>English</b>	<b>Kazakh</b>
1. alarm clock	қоңыраулы сағат
2. bed	төсек
3. bedspread	төсек жапқыш
4. blanket	көрпе
5. chest of drawers	комод
6. cot	кушетка
7. double bed	екі адамдық төсек
8. dresser/bureau	шкаф
9. jewelry box	әшекей салатын қорап
10. mattress	қалың көрпеше
11. mirror	айна
12. night table/ nightstand	стөлше
13. pillow	жастық
14. pillowcase	жастықтың тысы
15. sheet	ақжайма

**PROFESSION**

Мамандық

<b>English</b>	<b>Kazakh</b>
1. actor (actress)	әртіс
2. agronomist	агроном
3. architect	құрылысшы
4. artist; painter	суретші
5. assistant	көмекші
6. author	автор
7. baker	наубайшы
8. barber	шаштараз
9. barman / barmaid	бармен
10. biologist	биолог
11. bricklayer	тас қалаушы
12. builder	құрылысшы
13. bus driver	автобус жүргізуші
14. businessman / woman	кәсіпкер



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

15. butcher	қасапшы
16. carpenter	ағаш ұстасы
17. chef	бас аспазшы
18. chemist	химик, аптекарь
19. cook	аспазшы
20. decorator	көркемдеуші дизайнер
21. dentist	тіс дәрігері
22. designer	дизайнер
23. director	директор
24. doctor	дәрігер
25. driver	жүргізуші
26. economist	экономист
27. editor	редактор
28. electrician	электрик
29. engineer	инженер
30. farmer	фермер
31. film director	кинорежиссер
32. fireman	өрт сөндіруші
33. fisherman	балықшы
34. garbageman (refuse collector)	қоқыс шығарушы
35. hairdresser	шаштараз
36. historian	тарихшы
37. interpreter	аудармашы
38. jeweler	зергер
39. journalist	тілші
40. judge	сот
41. lawyer	заңгер
42. mathematician	математик
43. mechanic	механик
44. musician	музыкант

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

45. nurse	медбике
46. painter	сыршы, суретші
47. philologist	филолог
48. photographer	суретке түсіруші
49. physicist	физик
50. pilot	ұшқыш
51. poet	ақын
52. politician	саясаткер
53. scientist	ғалым
54. shoemaker	етікші
55. shop assistant	сатушы
56. surgeon	оташы
57. tailor	тігінші
58. teacher	оқытушы
59. telephonist	телефонист
60. translator	аудармашы
61. turner	токарь
62. vet veterinary surgeon	мал дәрігері
63. waiter	даяшы
64. weaver	тоқымашы
65. welder	дәнекерші
66. worker	жұмысшы
67. writer	жазушы

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

SPORT

Спорт

English	Kazakh
1. an athlete	спортшы
2. badminton	бадминтон
3. baseball	бейзбол
4. Basketball	баскетбол
5. beach volleyball	жағажайдағы волейбол
6. biathlon	биатлон
7. bowling/ skittles	боулинг/кегли
8. boxing	бокс
9. car racing	жарыс
10. chess	шахмат
11. Climbing	жартасқа шығу
12. Court	теннис ойнайтын жер
13. Crew	команда
14. cricket	крикет
15. cycling	велоспорт
16. draughts	дойбы
17. football/soccer	футбол
18. goal	қақпа
19. golf	гольф
20. gym	гимнастикалық зал
21. gymnastics	гимнастика
22. handball	гандбол
23. high jump	биіктікке секіру
24. hockey	хоккей
25. ice rink	сырғанақ

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

26. instructor	нұсқаушы
27. national team	ел құрамасы
28. net	Топ
29. racket	ракетка
30. referee	спорт судьясы
31. riding	ат жарысы
32. ring	ринг
33. rugby	рэгби
34. running race	жүгіруден жарыс
35. stadium	стадион
36. to break a record	рекордты оза басу
37. to compete in a championship	чемпионатқа қатысу
38. to draw a game	ойынды теңбе теңге аяқтау
39. to lose the competition	жарыста ұтылу
40. to set records	рекорд жасау
41. to train	жаттығу
42. to win the competition	жарыста жеңу
43. to win the cup	кубокты ұту
44. weight lifting	ауыр атлетика
45. wrestling	күрес

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

THEATRE

Театр

<b>English</b>	<b>Kazakh</b>
1. ballet dancer	биші
2. bar	тамақ ішетін жер
3. cloakroom	киім ілетін жер
4. curtain	шымылдық
5. curtain calls	сахнаға шақыру
6. director	режиссер
7. dressing room	кинетін бөлме
8. foyer	кіре беріс
9. make up	грим жағу
10.matinee	таңертеңгі спектакль
11.rehearsal	дайындық
12.row	қатар
13.scenery	әсемдеу
14.the balcony	балкон
15.the curtain falls/drops/goes down	шымылдық түсіріледі
16.the curtain goes up/rises	шымылдық көтеріледі
17.the curtains draw	шымылдық ашылады
18.the lights go up/down	от жанады/өшеді
19.to applaud	шапалақтау

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**CINEMA**

Кино

English	Kazakh
1. actor/actress	актер, әртіс
2. adventure film	қызық оқиғалы фильм
3. black and white film	түссіз фильм
4. box office	билет сататын орын
5. cameraman	кино түсіруші
6. cartoon	мультфильм
7. cast	рөльдерді бөлу
8. character	кейіпкер
9. cinema, (movie) theater	кино/кинотеатр
10.colour film	түрлі – түсті фильм
11.comedy	күлдіргі
12.crime film	қылмыс туралы фильм
13.director	режиссер
14.documentary film	документальды
15.drama	драма
16.educational film	өнегелі–өсиетті фильм
17.episode	оқиға
18.feature film	көркем фильм
19.flash back	өткенге оралу
20.historical film	тарихи фильм
21.horror film	үрейлі фильм
22.musical	музыкалық
23.mute film	үнсіз (сөзсіз) фильм
24.poster	жарнама
25.producer	жетекші, продюсер

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

26.scene	сахна
27.science fiction film	ғылыми фантастикалық фильм
28.screen	экран
29.scriptwriter	сценарий жазушы
30.short length film	қысқа метражды фильм
31.showing	көрсетілім
32.sound film	дыбысталған фильм
33.the main (leading) role	басты роль
34.to act/to play	рөльде ойнау
35.to be dubbed in russian	орыс тіліне аударылған
36.to book tickets	билетке тапсырыс беру
37.to come out	жарыққа шығу
38.to go into production	өндіріске шығару
39.to release a film	фильмді экранға шығару
40.to shoot a film	кино түсіру

**WEATHER**

Ауа райы

<b>English</b>	<b>Kazakh</b>
1. autumn	күз
2. breeze	самал
3. bright	жарық
4. chilly	салқын
5. clear	анық, ашық
6. cloudless	бұлтсыз
7. cloudy	бұлтты
8. cold	суық, аязды
9. damp	дымқыл, шикі

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

10. defoliation	күзде жапырақтың түсуі
11. degree	градус
12. dew	шық
13. drizzle	сіркіреген жауын
14. dry	құрғақ
15. dull	бүркек, бұлтты
16. early frosts	қатқак, суық
17. foggy	бұлдыр, тұманды
18. freezing	аязды, ызғарлы
19. hail	бұршақ
20. heat	аптап ыстық
21. hot	ыстық
22. hurricane	дауыл
23. icicle	дүмелек
24. indian Summer	қоңыр күз
25. lightning	найзағай
26. mild	жұмсақ
27. mist	тұман
28. nasty	нашар ауа райы
29. pressure	қысым
30. puddle	шалшық
31. rain	жаңбыр
32. rainbow	кемпіркосақ
33. ray	күн сәулесі
34. season	жыл мезгілдері
35. shower	нөсер
36. sky	аспан
37. snowfall	қар басу



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

38. spring	көктем
39. storm	дауыл
40. stuffy	қапырық
41. sunny	күнгей
42. to blossom	гүлдеу
43. to freeze	үсу, қатып қалу
44. to melt	еру
45. to shine	жарқырау
46. warm	жылы
47. weather forecast	ауа райы
48. weatherman	ауа райын бақылаушы
49. wet	ылғалды
50. wind	жел

**List of the Words and Expressions**

**I. Person**

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. man              | 15. healthy                                    |
| 2. woman            | 16. head                                       |
| 3. girl             | 17. hair (dark, fair, black)                   |
| 4. boy              | 18. face (round, oval)                         |
| 5. child (children) | 19. nose (long, short,<br>straight, turned-up) |
| 6. young            | 20. lips (red, full, thin)                     |
| 7. old              | 21. eyes (large, small)                        |
| 8. middle aged      | 22. ears                                       |
| 9. age              | 23. hands                                      |
| 10. tall            | 24. arms                                       |
| 11. short           | 25. legs                                       |
| 12. thin            | 26. feet (right, left)                         |
| 13. strong          | 27. nice                                       |
| 14. weak            |  |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- |                  |                           |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| 28. good-looking | 62. fashionable           |
| 29. pretty       | 63. in the latest fashion |
| 30. lovely       | 64. old-fashioned         |
| 31. beautiful    | 65. character             |
| 32. dress        | 66. nature                |
| 33. blouse       | 67. manner                |
| 34. skirt        | 68. to behave             |
| 35. tights       | 69. good                  |
| 36. socks        | 70. bad                   |
| 37. shoes        | 71. kind                  |
| 38. boots        | 72. friendly              |
| 39. jeans        | 73. polite                |
| 40. shorts       | 74. fair                  |
| 41. shirt        | 75. helpful               |
| 42. T-shirt      | 76. honest                |
| 43. trousers     | 77. quiet                 |
| 44. pullover     | 78. merry                 |
| 45. jacket       | 79. serious               |
| 46. suit         | 80. clever                |
| 47. scarf        | 81. dull                  |
| 48. tie          | 82. normal                |
| 49. hat          | 83. active                |
| 50. cap          | 84. passive               |
| 51. coat         | 85. careful               |
| 52. raincoat     | 86. careless              |
| 53. winter coat  | 87. truthful              |
| 54. bag          | 88. (un)pleasant          |
| 55. handbag      | 89. proud                 |
| 56. case         | 90. strange               |
| 57. to wear      | 91. typical of            |
| 58. to put on    | 92. good friend           |
| 59. to take off  | 93. fine fellow           |
| 60. to fit       | 94. to change             |
| 61. well-dressed | 95. to improve            |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 96. to be able to     | 106. birthday party   |
| 97. to be good at     | 107. birthday present |
| 98. ability           | 108. grown-up         |
| 99. hobby             | 109. to spend         |
| 100. to be born       | 110. childhood        |
| 101. in the family of | 111. to move to       |
| 102. at the age of    | 112. to go to school  |
| 103. to live          | 113. ninth-former     |
| 104. life             | 114. student          |
| 105. birthday         |                       |

He is my age. I'm 14 year old. What's he like? I can't stand him. I like him (her). That's like him. He is hopeless. Happy birthday to you. I wish you many happy returns of the day.

**II. House Flat**

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. to live              | 19. living room          |
| 2. in the city          | 20. dining-room          |
| 3. town                 | 21. bedroom              |
| 4. village              | 22. children's room      |
| 5. country              | 23. kitchen              |
| 6. address              | 24. bathroom             |
| 7. street               | 25. balcony              |
| 8. house                | 26. gas                  |
| 9. flat                 | 27. electricity          |
| 10. block of flats      | 28. hot water            |
| 11. on the ground floor | 29. to turn on (off)     |
| 12. on the first floor  | 30. to put out the light |
| 13. lift                | 31. room                 |
| 14. stairs              | 32. bed                  |
| 15. upstairs            | 33. wardrobe             |
| 16. downstairs          | 34. mirror               |
| 17. hall                | 35. carpet               |
| 18. corridor            | 36. floor                |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 37. wall                          | 68. to furnish a flat                   |
| 38. corner                        | 69. in the centre of (in the middle of) |
| 39. door                          | 70. to the right (left) of              |
| 40. window                        | 71. on the right (left)                 |
| 41. curtain                       | 72. near                                |
| 42. table                         | 73. curtains                            |
| 43. sideboard                     | 74. chute for refuse                    |
| 44. chair                         | 75. picture                             |
| 45. armchair                      | 76. storey                              |
| 46. sofa                          | 77. wallpaper                           |
| 47. picture                       | 78. floor                               |
| 48. vase                          | 79. arm-chair                           |
| 49. lamp                          | 80. to be on the top floor              |
| 50. radio                         | 81. to be in the second storey          |
| 51. video                         | 82. refrigerator                        |
| 52. TV set                        | 83. furniture                           |
| 53. record-player                 | 84. gas-stove                           |
| 54. computer                      | 85. a piece of furniture                |
| 55. telephone                     | 86. standard-lamp                       |
| 56. cupboard                      | 87. a drawing-room (sitting room)       |
| 57. refrigerator                  | 88. to put                              |
| 58. yard                          | 89. to place                            |
| 59. garden                        | 90. to move to a new                    |
| 60. flower bed                    | 91. dressing table                      |
| 61. kitchen-garden                | 92. night table                         |
| 62. garage                        | 93. writing-desk                        |
| 63. to be of one's own            | 94. book case                           |
| 64. modern conveniences           | 95. bookshelves                         |
| 65. hot and cold water            |   |
| 66. to be on the top floor        |   |
| 67. to have a house warming party |   |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**III. Names of Relationship Family**

- |                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. father            | 33. worker   |
| 2. mother            | 34. pilot  |
| 3. parents           | 35. painter  |
| 4. grandfather       | 36. builder  |
| 5. grandmother       | 37. actor  |
| 6. grandparents      | 38. pianist  |
| 7. daughter          | 39. architect  |
| 8. son               | 40. cook   |
| 9. (elder) brother   | 41. typist   |
| 10. (younger) sister | 42. family (large, small)                            |
| 11. husband          | 43. (four) people in the family                      |
| 12. wife             | 44. relative   |
| 13. baby             | 45. 14 years old                                     |
| 14. aunt             | 46. grownup  |
| 15. uncle            | 47. to look after                                    |
| 16. child            | 48. to bring up the children                         |
| 17. cousin           | 49. to work (a doctor, engineer, teacher)            |
| 18. mother-in-law    | 50. housewife, pensioner                             |
| 19. father-in-law    | 51. to go to school (college, university, institute) |
| 20. nephew           | 52. to have friends                                  |
| 21. niece            | 53. to invite to                                     |
| 22. stepmother       | 54. to have a party                                  |
| 23. stepfather       | 55. to congratulate                                  |
| 24. stepson          | 56. a job  |
| 25. stepdaughter     | 57. to be at work (at school)                        |
| 26. doctor           | 58. to work hard                                     |
| 27. engineer         |  |
| 28. teacher          |  |
| 29. housewife        |  |
| 30. pensioner        |  |
| 31. driver           |  |
| 32. lawyer           |  |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 59. to take care of                  | 73. to make tea (coffee)             |
| 60. to do one's best                 | 74. to switch on (TV,<br>radio, set) |
| 61. to love                          | 75. to air the room                  |
| 62. to be happy                      | 76. to wash up                       |
| 63. to meet somebody                 | 77. to cook                          |
| 64. to be from some place            | 78. to do one's room                 |
| 65. to live in a hostel              | 79. to water flowers                 |
| 66. to rent a room                   | 80. to keep house                    |
| 67. to be lucky                      | 81. to do housework                  |
| 68. to be married                    | 82. to leave school                  |
| 69. to be single                     | 83. to be ... years old              |
| 70. to be fond of                    | 84. it takes ... to get to ...       |
| 71. to be good at<br>something       | 85. by the way                       |
| 72. to be good at doing<br>something |                                      |

**IV. My Day**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. to get up                                       | 14. to prepare breakfast<br>(dinner, supper) |
| 2. to make the bed                                 | 15. to do homework                           |
| 3. to do morning exercises                         | 16. to wash up                               |
| 4. to clean one's teeth                            | 17. to wash the dishes                       |
| 5. to wash one's face and<br>hands with cold water | 18. to lay the table                         |
| 6. to dry oneself                                  | 19. to do the room                           |
| 7. to have a bath                                  | 20. to dust                                  |
| 8. to take a shower                                | 21. to clean the things                      |
| 9. to do one's hair                                | 22. to do the housework                      |
| 10. to go to school                                | 23. to help about the<br>house               |
| 11. to have lessons                                | 24. to water the flowers                     |
| 12. to come back home<br>from school               | 25. to buy food                              |
| 13. to cook  |  |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 26. to look after the small<br>sister (brother) | 30. to play         |
| 27. to read books                               | 31. to meet friends |
| 28. to go for a walk                            | 32. to go to bed    |
| 29. to watch TV                                 | 33. to sleep well   |

**V. Meals**

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. to be at table                                | 25. potato           |
| 2. to have breakfast<br>(dinner, supper)         | 26. tomato           |
| 3. to have tea (coffee)                          | 27. cucumber         |
| 4. to drink milk (coke,<br>juice, mineral water) | 28. cabbage          |
| 5. to eat soup                                   | 29. fruit            |
| 6. meat  | 30. apple            |
| 7. fish  | 31. lemon            |
| 8. sausage                                       | 32. orange           |
| 9. porridge                                      | 33. banana           |
| 10. cheese                                       | 34. dish             |
| 11. egg  | 35. plate            |
| 12. salad  | 36. cup              |
| 13. butter                                       | 37. glass            |
| 14. bread (white, brown)                         | 38. spoon            |
| 15. cake   | 39. fork             |
| 16. sugar  | 40. knife            |
| 17. ice-cream                                    | 41. a piece of       |
| 18. sweets                                       | 42. a spoonful       |
| 19. chocolate                                    | 43. a teaspoonful of |
| 20. salt   | 44. cafe             |
| 21. jam  | 45. restaurant       |
| 22. chips  | 46. bar              |
| 23. cornflakes                                   | 47. menu             |
| 24. vegetables                                   | 48. waiter           |
|  | 49. to order pizza   |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

50. Help yourself to the salad.

51. Pass me the salt, please.

52. I have had enough, thank you.

53. Some more cake?

54. It's lovely (nice)!

55. We'll have fish and chips, please.

56. I can't possibly eat any more.

**VI. University**

1. to enter an university

2. to take a subject

3. to come to smb. =to be good at smth.

4. to attend classes

5. to take notes

6. research work

7. to be strong in

8. to be weak in

9. lecture on

10. seminar on

11. to work regularly

12. to make progress

13. to work by fits and starts

14. to get good (bad) marks

15. to fail in a subject

16. to fail at an exam

17. to fall behind the group

18. to catch up with the group

19. to read up for an exam

20. to take an exam in

21. to pass an exam in

22. to hand in

23. to learn the poem by heart

24. to speak in a loud voice

25. to make up a dialogue on the topic "University Life"

26. to fetch a piece of chalk

27. to do exercise 10 in written form

28. to receive school education

29. to go to school

30. to learn different subjects

31. to have lessons

32. to do homework

33. to have labour training (physical training)

34. to work on the school plot

35. to be on duty



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 36. to join the society<br>(circle, club)  | 57. to work hard   |
| 37. to make reports                        | 58. to be good at  |
| 38. to help                                | 59. to do well   |
| 39. to organize evening<br>parties         | 60. to make progress                                     |
| 40. to take part in school<br>life         | 61. to improve   |
| 41. to go on an excursion                  | 62. to take an examination                               |
| 42. to work in a workshop                  | 63. to pass the<br>examination                           |
| 43. to get marks                           | 64. to go up to the form                                 |
| 44. to get a four (five)                   | 65. to go to the music<br>school                         |
| 45. to clean the classroom                 | 66. to learn by heart                                    |
| 46. to take part in sports<br>competitions | 67. to practice English                                  |
| 47. to attend school                       | 68. to read texts  |
| 48. to study school<br>subjects            | 69. to take notes  |
| 49. to be in the 10 <sup>th</sup> form     | 70. to write a dictation (a<br>composition)              |
| 50. to teach (train,<br>instruct)          | 71. to do a translation                                  |
| 51. time-table                             | 72. to look up a word<br>(expression) in a<br>dictionary |
| 52. record-book                            | 73. to make mistakes                                     |
| 53. schoolmate                             | 74. to correct the mistakes                              |
| 54. classmate                              | 75. to get mistakes                                      |
| 55. first term                             | 76. to get marks   |
| 56. to have winter<br>holidays             | 77. to do a problem (one's<br>task, homework)            |

The bell has gone. The lesson is over. How are you getting on? I've got (a) 5 for my English.

**VII. My Town (Village)**

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. be situated                 | 19. flower gardens (parks,<br>square, stadiums)         |
| 2. large city                  | 20. (not) far from                                      |
| 3. be big (small, new)         | 21. be a district (region)<br>centre                    |
| 4. there are several districts | 22. be a railway station<br>(underground station)       |
| 5. industrial                  | 23. be a sea (river) port                               |
| 6. factories                   | 24. by bus (tram, trolley-<br>bus)                      |
| 7. offices                     | 25. the name of the village<br>(town) is                |
| 8. modern                      | 26. countryside   |
| 9. monuments                   | 27. cattle-farm   |
| 10. hospitals                  | 28. to help to gather the<br>harvest (to pick up fruit) |
| 11. post-offices               | 29. to work in the kitchen-<br>garden                   |
| 12. museums                    |   |
| 13. palaces                    |   |
| 14. shops                      |   |
| 15. libraries                  |   |
| 16. theaters                   |   |
| 17. cinemas                    |   |
| 18. concert-halls              |   |

**VIII. Rest. Entertainment**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. to be (go) on holiday   | 11. to go to the picture<br>gallery                   |
| 2. a month's holiday   | 12. museum of fine arts                               |
| 3. to go to the country for<br>one's holidays                    | 13. work of art                                       |
| 4. to spend one's holidays<br>in the country (at the<br>seaside) | 14. artist  |
| 5. to camp out   | 15. painter   |
| 6. to put up a tent  | 16. to draw (paint)                                   |
| 7. to have a camp-fire (a<br>picnic)                             | 17. drawing (painting)                                |
| 8. to sleep in the open  | 18. to collect  |
| 9. to go on an excursion   | 19. collection  |
| 10. to have a party  | 20. to go to the theatre<br>(cinema, concert, circus) |
|  | 21. actor   |
|  | 22. actress   |
|  | 23. to play the part of                               |

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 24. talented                                      | 39. to applaud                     |
| 25. famous  | 40. to see the film (the pictures) |
| 26. popular singer                                | 41. to listen to the orchestra     |
| 27. to play an instrument (the piano, the guitar) | 42. to go to the disco             |
| 28. theatre-goer                                  | 43. to dance                       |
| 29. spectator                                     | 44. to take part in the concert    |
| 30. bill  | 45. to enjoy                       |
| 31. box-office                                    | 46. to listen to the radio         |
| 32. to buy  | 47. to speak on the radio          |
| 33. a ticket                                      | 48. to hear it on (over) the radio |
| 34. stage   | 49. to watch TV, television        |
| 35. orchestra                                     | 50. to see the match on TV         |
| 36. stall   |                                    |
| 37. hall  |                                    |
| 38. gallery                                       |                                    |

What's on today? The film is on for a week. I enjoyed every minute of it.

### IX. Travelling

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. to travel                                       | 13. to go on a journey        |
| 2. travelling                                      | 14. to make a (train) journey |
| 3. to travel (go) by train (boat, plane, car, bus) | 15. to travel for pleasure    |
| 4. to take the train to                            | 16. to go sightseeing         |
| 5. fast (slow) train                               | 17. to leave for              |
| 6. carriage  | 18. to arrive at              |
| 7. compartment                                     | 19. to stop at                |
| 8. platform  | 20. to change trains at       |
| 9. to buy (book) tickets                           | 21. to catch (miss) the train |
| 10. booking-office                                 | 22. the railway station       |
| 11. to make a trip (by train)                      | 23. to go on a hike           |
| 12. to go on a trip                                | 24. to take part in hikes     |

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

- 25. to go for a drive
- 26. to take a taxi

- 27. to park a car

There's a train to Astana at 8.10. The next train goes at 9.20. The train leaves Astana at 19:00. For how long do we stop here? The train is 10 minutes late. It gets to Astana at 12:00. How long does it take to get to Astana? Can you give me a lift?

**X. Geography**

- 1. be situated
- 2. lies in
- 3. be washed by
- 4. the area is
- 5. the capital is
- 6. to consist of
- 7. in the eastern (western, northern, southern) part of
- 8. industrial (agricultural) area
- 9. there are big forests, high (low) mountains (hills)
- 10. be covered with mountains and hills, lakes
- 11. the river flows to the east (west),
- 12. crosses the country
- 13. the main ports are
- 14. the country has a population of
- 15. the largest cities (towns) are
- 16. has a developed industry (agriculture)
- 17. the climate differs from one part to another
- 18. the temperature in summer (winter) is high (low)
- 19. the summer (winter) lasts for
- 20. the weather in summer (winter)
- 21. the wind blows from
- 22. the sun shines
- 23. cold (cool, warm, hot) in winter (summer, spring, autumn).

**XI. Weather**

- 1. seasons
- 2. spring

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 3. summer  | 21. to shine                         |
| 4. autumn  | 22. to blow                          |
| 5. winter  | 23. rainy                            |
| 6. weather   | 24. sunny                            |
| 7. fine  | 25. windy                            |
| 8. lovely  | 26. icy                              |
| 9. bright  | 27. snowy                            |
| 10. unsettled  | 28. dull day                         |
| 11. awful  | 29. lovely day                       |
| 12. it's cold, cool, warm,<br>hot, quite, rather dry | 30. it's raining<br>(snowing)        |
| 13. wet  | 31. mainly cloud                     |
| 14. fresh  | 32. to keep fine                     |
| 15. there are clouds                                 | 33. fair                             |
| 16. wind   | 34. the temperature rises<br>(falls) |
| 17. strong   | 35. 10 degrees above<br>(below) zero |
| 18. light  | 36. forecast                         |
| 19. dark   |                                      |
| 20. in the sky                                       |                                      |

What's the weather like? It looks like rain. Lovely day, isn't it? What's the temperature? What does the thermometer say? What's the outlook for the next day? What does the weather forecast say?

## XII. Health

- |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. health                     | 10. to cough                  |
| 2. to be in good health       | 11. to have a touch of<br>flu |
| 3. healthy                    | 12. breakdown                 |
| 4. to fall ill                | 13. to stay in bed            |
| 5. illness                    | 14. to have a rest            |
| 6. to have a heart<br>trouble | 15. to be in hospital         |
| 7. to suffer from             | 16. to send for the<br>doctor |
| 8. it hurts                   | 17. to give first aid         |
| 9. to catch cold              |                               |

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

- |                                      |                              |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 18. to have an operation             | 30. to take temperature      |
| 19. to feel                          | 31. to have high temperature |
| 20. fit (fresh, strong, weak, tired) | 32. to have a headache       |
| 21. to heal                          | 33. medicine                 |
| 22. to cure                          | 34. to prescribe a medicine  |
| 23. to be ill                        | 35. to go to the chemist's   |
| 24. to be sick                       | 36. prescription             |
| 25. to examine                       | 37. to take the medicine     |
| 26. the sick child                   | 38. to be (get) well soon    |
| 27. to be examined                   |                              |
| 28. examination                      |                              |
| 29. to feel the pulse                |                              |

How are you? I'm quite well (all right, very well, fine). I don't feel well. You look very well. What's the matter with you? Nothing serious. What's the trouble? I've got an awful ache. Are you doing anything for it? Some rest will do you good. Take care of yourself.

### XIII. Sport

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. to go in for sports (athletics) | 15. instructor                       |
| 2. to run                          | 16. sportsman                        |
| 3. to jump                         | 17. to compete for                   |
| 4. to swim                         | 18. sport competition                |
| 5. to ski                          | 19. start                            |
| 6. to skate                        | 20. finish                           |
| 7. long (high) jump                | 21. sports ground                    |
| 8. races                           | 22. stadium                          |
| 9. to go skating (skiing)          | 23. sports hall                      |
| 10. figure skating                 | 24. playing fields                   |
| 11. to train (for a race)          | 25. outdoor (indoor) sports          |
| 12. to practice                    | 26. Olympic Games                    |
| 13. to keep fit                    | 27. to set up (hold, break) a record |
| 14. trainer                        |                                      |

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

---

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 28. champion  | 34. to lose                        |
| 29. to play games<br>(football, volleyball,<br>basketball ,tennis,<br>table-tennis, hockey) | 35. draw                           |
| 30. to play in a match  | 36. spectators                     |
| 31. to score a goal   | 37. fans                           |
| 32. the score is three-nil  | 38. to cheer                       |
| 33. to win  | 39. winner                         |
|   | 40. to get first place             |
|   | 41. gold (silver, bronze)<br>medal |

He is good at running. They won two-nil. The game ended in a draw.

### XIV. Shopping

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. shopping              | 22. cheap                               |
| 2. shop                  | 23. expensive                           |
| 3. department store      | 24. money                               |
| 4. market                | 25. change                              |
| 5. supermarket           | 26. pound                               |
| 6. the baker's           | 27. pence                               |
| 7. the grocer's          | 28. dollar                              |
| 8. the greengrocer's     | 29. cent                                |
| 9. department            | 30. size                                |
| 10. the food department  | 31. to try on                           |
| 11. shop-assistant       | 32. too big (small, wide,<br>tight)     |
| 12. shop-girl            | 33. to fit                              |
| 13. owner                | 34. to suit                             |
| 14. customer             | 35. to match one's dress                |
| 15. to go shopping       | 36. fashionable                         |
| 16. to do one's shopping | 37. to be in (out of)<br>fashion        |
| 17. shopping bag         | 38. to come into (go out<br>of) fashion |
| 18. to buy               |   |
| 19. to sell              |   |
| 20. to pay               |   |
| 21. price                |   |

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....  
What can I do for you? What size shoes do you wear? I take size 41 shoes. It's the latest fashion. What size are you? The coat is a size too big for me. How much is it? It's \$25. Here you are. Here's your change.

### XV. Holidays

1. to celebrate a holiday
2. state holidays (May Day, Victory Day, International Women's Day, Defender of Fatherland Day, Constitution Day, Knowledge Day)
3. to decorate a building (a city, a school, a street) with flowers, flags, placards
4. to hold a holiday meeting
5. to watch the parade
6. to send (receiver) holiday greeting (holiday postcards)
7. to have a holiday concert
8. Christmas, New Year, New Year's Eve, Christmas tree, New Year's tree, Santa Claus
9. to wish, New Year's wishes
10. to have a New Year's party
11. to send (receive) New Year's cards (greetings)
12. to see the New Year in.
13. Merry Christmas!  
Happy New Year!  
I wish you a  
Happy New Year!  
Best wishes!

### REFERENCES

(Елтану анықтамалығы)

**A Admiralty** — that part of the British government which controls the navy.

**Angles** — a north Germanic tribe who with the Saxons invaded Britain in the 5<sup>th</sup> century – England gets its name from the Angels.



## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Anglo-Saxons** — Germanic tribes which invaded Britain in the 5<sup>th</sup> century .

**B bagpipes** — a musical instrument with pipes and a wind-bag very popular in Scotland . The national instrument of the Scots is the bagpipes.

**Banqueting House** — one of the most famous buildings in London situated in Whitehall.

**Bath** — a town in the south of England known for its Roman baths . Some are in ruins, others are still used today. The hot water comes out of the ground.

**Belfast** — the capital of Northern Ireland.

**Ben Nevis** — the highest mountain (1,343 metres) in Great Britain. It is in the Highlands of Scotland.

**Big Ben** — the bell which strikes the hours in the Clock Tower of the Houses of Parliament in London. It was made in 1858 and was named after Benjamin Hall, First Commissioner of Works at the time it was hung.

**Birmingham** — the second largest city in Great Britain after London.

**Britain — Great Britain.**

**British Isles** — a group of island off North-West Europe consisting of Great Britain, Ireland and many other islands.

**Briton** — a native of Great Britain.

**C Cambridge** — a town in England known for its university.

**Cardiff** — the capital of Wales, a large industrial centre and a port.

**Celts** — the tribes which lived in the British Isles when they were invaded by the Anglo-Saxons .

**Cenotaph** — a monument in London put up in 1920 in memory of the people killed in the first world war.

**Chester** — a town in England which was a Roman settlement now it has a lot of ancient buildings.

**City, the** — the historic centre of London, one of the greatest financial and commercial centres of the world.

**College** — 1) a school for highest education, often part of a university; 2) a small university; 3) a public school.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Conservative Party** — one of the political parties in Great Britain. (*See also* **Liberal Party** and **Democratic Party**).

**Continent** — Europe without the British Isles; so called by the people living in the British Isles.

**D** **Downing Street** — the London street in which (at Number 10) the Prime Minister officially lives.

**Druid** — officer of Welsh Eisteddfod . (*See* **Eisteddfod**).

**E** **East End** — the eastern part of London, the industrial area near the port of London on the Thames, the inhabitants of East End are mostly poor people.

**Edinburgh** — the capital of Scotland; an important transport junction.

**Edinburgh Castle** — the famous ancient fortress in the city of Edinburgh.

**Edinburgh Festival** — a music and drama festival held every year in September. People come to it from all over the world; new plays can be seen and new music can be heard there.

**Eisteddfod** — a Welsh musical festival.

**England** — the country occupying the largest, southern part of Great Britain.

**F** **"Flying Scotsman"** — a famous London Edinburgh express train.

**Franklin** — the name given to a free man, who owned a small area of land in Britain in the 14<sup>th</sup> and 15<sup>th</sup> centuries.

**G** **Gentleman** — 1) a man who is polite, kind and honourable; 2) a man of high social position.

**Glasgow** — a city in the south of Scotland, on the River Clyde, the third largest city in Great Britain, and one of the biggest ports.

**Great Britain** — 1) the largest island in the British Isles; 2) the state situated on the island of Great Britain, and consisting of England, Scotland, Wales and number of smaller islands.

**Grimsby** — Britain's biggest fishing port on the east coast of England.

**H** **Half-crown** — a silver-coloured coin (before 1970).

**Highlander** — a native of the Highlands Scotland.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Highland Games** — a traditional Scottish meeting at which competitions in athletics, Highland dancing and bagpipe playing are held.

**Highlands** — a region of high ground in the north of Scotland.

**High tea** — an early evening meal (or late tea) in homes where dinner is not eaten in the evening.

**Home Office** — the British government department which controls local government, the police, prisons and other state organizations.

**Horse Guards** — the headquarters of the Horse Guards in Whitehall, London.

**House of Commons** — the lower house of the British Parliament, the members of which are elected.

**House of lords** — the upper house of the of British Parliament, the members of which are lords and bishops. They are not elected.

**Houses of Parliament** — the buildings in which the British Parliament sits.

**Hyde Park** — the most famous London park where political meetings and demonstrations are held.

**I Inspector** — a police officer ranking above a sergeant.

**Ireland** — an island of the British Isles, to the west of Great Britain, divided into the Irish Republic and Northern Ireland.

**Irish, the** — the people of Ireland.

**Irish Sea** — the sea between Ireland and Great Britain. It is open to the Atlantic Ocean in the north and the south.

**J Jutes** — a Germanic tribe that look part in the conquest of Britain in the 5<sup>th</sup> and 6<sup>th</sup> centuries .

**K Kent** — a county in South-England.

**Kilt** — a kind of skirt worn as part of the dress of men of the Scottish Highlands. The kilt is also worn by women and children.

**L Labour Party** — one of the largest political parties in Great Britain. It is a socialist party.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Lancaster** — a town near the north-west coast of England.

**Leeds** — a large industrial city in the north-east of England.

**Liberal Party** — one of the bourgeois political parties of Great Britain.

**Loch Lomond** — a lake (37 km long, 1—8km wide) in West Scotland, north of Glasgow.

**London** — the capital of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the largest industrial and cultural centre of the country.

**Lord Chancellor** — president of the House of lords.

**Lowlands** — the part of central Scotland lying between the Highlands and the southern uplands.

**M** **Manchestre** — an industrial and commercial centre in the north-west of England. In the 19<sup>th</sup> century the Manchester Ship Canal was built and Manchester became an important port.

**Member of Parliament (M.P)** — an elected representative in the British Parliament.

**Metropolitan Police** — the London police ("Metropolitan" means "of or in a capital city").

**N** **National Gallery** — the greatest collection of paintings in Great Britain; its building was opened in 1824.

**National Portrait Gallery** — a collection of more than 4,000 portraits of famous people of Great Britain.

**Nelson's Column** — the monument to Admiral Nelson in Trafalgar Square. It is a 44-metre column with a 5-metre figure of the Admiral on top of it.

**Nottingham** — an important industrial centre in the middle of England on the River Trent.

**O** **Oxford** — a town in England north of London known for its 12<sup>th</sup> century university and its colleges.

**P** **Palace of Westminster** — the Official name of the parliament buildings in London .

**Parliament** — the main law making body in the United Kingdom.

## BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Piccadilly Circus** — a square in the central part of London. From it some of London's best-known streets radiate.

**Piper** — a musician who plays bagpipes.

**Port Talbot** — an industrial centre and a port on South Wales.

**Pound** — the British unit of money, 100 pence make one pound (1) —

**Princes Street** — the main street in Edinburgh, it has rich shops on one side and gardens on the other.

**Royal Mint** — the place where the official coins are made, it was situated in the Tower until 1809 .

**Rugby football** — a type of football played with an oval ball, by two teams of either thirteen or fifteen men. This is the kind of football in which the players may run with the ball in their hands.

**Saxons** — one of the Germanic tribes that invaded Britain in the 5th century.

**Scot** — a person born in Scotland.

**Scotland** — the country in the north of Great Britain.

**Scotland Yard** — the name of the police headquarters and the police itself.

**Scotsman** — a native of Scotland.

**Scottish** — typical of Scotland and its people .

**Sea-Loch** — a narrow part of the sea reaching into the land.

**Serf** — a person who, under the feudal system, worked on the land and could be bought and sold together with the land.

**Session** — the formal meetings of Parliament lasting from the end of October till August of the next year.

**Severn** — a river in the west of England. It is 310 kilometres long.

**Sheffield** — a town in the middle of England, an important centre of heavy industry.

**Sir** — a word sometimes used when talking politely to a man (a teacher, an officer in the army, etc.).

**Sitting of the House of Commons** — meetings of the House of Commons when Parliament is in session.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Snowdon** — a mountain in North Wales with five peaks, rising to 1,085 metres.

**Social-Democratic Party** — one of the political parties in Great Britain.

**Speaker** — the presiding officer of the House of Commons.

**Stratford-on-Avon** — a town in the south-west of England on the River Avon. It is Shakespeare's birthplace.

**Swansea** — a port and an industrial centre in south-east Wales.

**T** **Thames** — a river (346 km long) rising in South England, and flowing east      **Tossing the caber** — a Scottish game in which a person throws a caber into the air and tries to make it land in a given place.

**Tower of London** — a group of ancient buildings east of the City of London on the north bank of the Thames — **Tayap**. The central tower was built in 1078-1085. For centuries the Tower was the main state prison. Today it is a historical museum.

**Trafalgar Square** — a square in the centre of London; it is the place where mass meetings and demonstrations take place.

**Treasury** — the government department that controls and spends public money.

**U** **United Kingdom (the U.K)** — the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. (*See* **Great Britain**)

**V** **Viking** — one the Scandinavian warriors who began to attack the British Isles in the 8<sup>th</sup> century. In England, the Vikings were called the Danes.

**W** **Wales** — the country in the west of Great Britain. It is a part of United Kingdom.

**War Office** — a department of the British Ministry of Defence.

**Welsh, the** — 1) the people of Wales; 2) the language spoken by the Welsh people.

**West End** — the western, aristocratic part of central London, where big hotels, shops, theatres and offices are.

**Westminster** — a district in the central part of London, the site of the Houses of Parliament.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**Westminster Abbey** — the ancient large church in London in which the coronation ceremony of almost all the English kings and queens has taken place . Many famous people are buried there.

**Westminster Palace** — *see* **Palace of Westminster**.

**Whitehall** — a London street in which there many government offices.

**William the Conqueror** — Duke of Normandy and King of England from 1066 till 1087 .

**Woolsack** — the seat in the British Parliament on which the Lord Chancellor sits in the House of Lords. At the time when the woolsack was first put in the Lord Chancellor's chair, wool was the main source of the national wealth.

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**FOUR FORMS OF IRREGULAR VERBS**

Бұрыс етістіктердің 4 тұлғасы

Дұрыс етістіктерге өткен шақта **-ed** жалғауы жалғанса, ал бұрыс етістіктердің өткен шақ тұлғалары әртүрлі болып келеді

<b>Infiniti Ve</b>	<b>Past Indefinite</b>	<b>Participle II</b>	<b>Participle I</b>	<b>Аудармасы</b>
arise	arose	Arisen	arising	көтерілу, шығу
awake	awoke	awoken	awaking	ояту, ояну
be	was, were	been	being	болу, бар
beat	beat	beaten	beating	ұру, соғу
become	became	become	becoming	болу, жарау, жарасу
begin	began	begun	beginning	бастау
blow	blew	blown	blowing	соғу, үрлеу, желбірету
break	broke	broken	breaking	сындыру, бөлу
bring	brought	brought	bringing	әкелу, келтіру
build	built	built	building	тұрғызу, салу
burn	burnt	burnt	burning	жану, өртеу
buy	bought	bought	buying	сатып алу
catch	caught	caught	catching	ұстап алу, қуып жету
choose	chose	chosen	choosing	таңдау
come	came	come	coming	келу, болу
cost	cost	cost	costing	тұру (ақшалай бағасы)
cut	cut	cut	cutting	кесу, қию
dare	dared	dared	daring	батыл болу
deal	dealt	dealt	dealing	біреумен істес болу
dig	dug	dug	diging	қазу, итеру
do	did	done	doing	істеу, дайындау
draw	drew	drawn	drawing	сурет салу
dream	dreamt/ed	dreamt/ed	dreaming	түс көру, арман ету
drink	drank	drunk	drinking	ішу, жұту
drive	drove	driven	driving	жүргізу, қуу
dwell	dwelt	dwelt	dwelling	болу, тұру
eat	ate	eaten	eating	жеу, жеп кою



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

fall	fell	fallen	falling	құлау, қайта төмен түсу
feed	fed	fed	feeding	тамақ беру, емізу
feel	felt	felt	feeling	сезу, жаны ашу, түсіну
fight	fought	fought	fighting	күресу, төбелесу
find	found	found	finding	табу, табылу
flee	fled	fled	fleeing	қашу, тасалау
fly	flew	flown	flying	ұшу, желбіреу
forbid	forbade	forbidden	forbiding	тыю, рұқсат етпеу
forget	forgot	forgotten	forgetting	ұмыту
forgive	forgave	forgiven	forgiving	кешіру
get	got	got	getting	алу, табу
give	gave	given	giving	беру
go	went	gone	going	бару, кету
grave	graven	graven/ed	graving	кесіп ою, есте қалдыру
grind	ground	ground	grinding	тарту, ұғу, жаттау
grow	grew	grown	growing	өсу, күшею
hang	hung/ed	hung/ed	hanging	ілу
have	had	had	having	бар, болу
hear	heard	heard	hearing	есту, тыңдау, білу
hide	hid	hidden	hiding	жасыру
hold	held	held	holding	басып алу, ұстап алу
hurt	hurt	hurt	hurting	соғып алу
keep	kept	kept	keeping	ұстау, сақтау, басқару
kneel	knelt	knelt	kneeling	тізесін ию, тізерлеу
know	knew	known	knowing	білу, тану
lay	laid	laid	laying	қою, жаю, жабу, төсеу
lead	led	led	leading	бастау, көрсету,
learn	learnt/ed	learnt/ed	learning	оқу, үйрену, зерттеу
leave	left	left	leaving	кету, тастау, қалдыру
lend	lent	lent	lending	қарыз беру
let	let	let	letting	рұқсат ету
lie	lay	lain	lying	жату, болу, қалу, тарту,
light	lit	lit	lighting	жағу, жарқылдау
lose	lost	lost	losing	жоғалту, адасу, айрылу
make	made	made	making	істеу, жасау, өндіру
mean	meant	meant	meaning	түсіну, арнау, белгілеу
meet	met	met	meeting	кездесу, жиналу
melt	melted	melted	melting	жібу, балқу, еру
pay	paid	paid	paying	төлеу
put	put	put	putting	қою
read	read	read	reading	оқу

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

ring	rang	rung	ringing	шылдырлау
rise	rose	risen	rising	көтерілу
run	ran	run	running	жүгіру
see	saw	seen	seeing	көру
say	said	said	saying	сөйлеу
sell	sold	sold	selling	сату
send	sent	sent	sending	жіберу, хабарлау
show	showed	shown	showing	көрсету
shine	shone	shone	shining	жаркырау
sing	sang	sung	singing	өлең айту
sit	sat	sat	sitting	отыру
sleep	slept	slept	sleeping	ұйықтау
speak	spoke	spoken	speaking	сөйлеу
swim	swam	swum	swimming	жүзу
sweep	swept	swept	sweeping	сыпыру
take	took	taken	taking	алу
teach	taught	taught	teaching	оқыту
tell	told	told	telling	айту, әңгімелеу
think	thought	thought	thinking	ойлау
under-stand	understood	under- stood	understand ding	түсіну
wake	woke	woken	waking	ояну, ояту
wear	wore	worn	wearing	кину
win	won	won	winning	ұту, жеңу
write	wrote	written	writing	жазу

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

**CONTENTS**  
**МАЗМЎҲЫ**

<b>Chapter I</b>	
Lesson <b>1-2</b> Reading: “ The English Alphabet” <b>4</b> , “About My Family” <b>13</b> Grammar: Four types of reading <b>15</b> Writing: Ex. I- X <b>11</b> Test (15 questions) <b>14</b>	
Lesson 3-4 Reading: “About Myself ” <b>16</b> “My birthday ” <b>23</b> Grammar: The Noun <b>17</b> Writing: Ex. I- X <b>21</b> Test (15 questions) <b>24</b>	
Lesson 5-6 Reading: “My best friend” <b>26</b> “Family life” <b>30</b> Grammar: Possessive case of Nouns <b>26</b> Writing: Ex. I- X <b>27</b> Test (15 questions) <b>31</b>	
Lesson 7-8 Reading: “My Daily Routine ” <b>33</b> “My Day off ” <b>42</b> Grammar: The Article <b>34</b> Writing: Ex. I-X <b>39</b> Test (15 questions) <b>43</b>	
Lesson 9-10 Reading: “My Favourite Room” <b>45</b> “My sister’s flat” <b>51</b> Grammar: Pronouns. Conjugating the verb “to be”	

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

.....

<p><b>46</b>                  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>48</b>                  Test (15 questions) <b>52</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 11-12                  Reading: “Hobbies” <b>54</b> “My Friend's Hobby ” <b>58</b>                  Grammar: Personal pronouns , Possessive pronouns ,                  There is, there are <b>55</b>                  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>55</b>                  Test (15 questions) <b>59</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 13-14                  Reading: “My Family's Meals ” <b>61</b>, Meals and                  cooking <b>67</b>                  Grammar: Reflexive pronouns, Demonstrative                  Pronouns. Conjugating the verb «to have» <b>63</b>                  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>64</b>                  Test (15 questions) <b>68</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 15-16                  Reading: “English is the Language of                  Communication” <b>70</b> “How do I learn English ” <b>71</b>                  Grammar: The Indefinite Pronouns <b>71</b>,                  Quantitative Pronouns <b>72</b>                  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>73</b>                  Test (15 questions) <b>78</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 17-18                  Reading: “Travelling” <b>80</b> “My Favourite Sport” <b>88</b>                  Grammar: Adjective <b>81</b>                  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>85</b>                  Test (15 questions) <b>89</b></p>	

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

.....

<p>Lesson 19-20  Reading: “At the Theatre” <b>91</b> “Cinema” <b>101</b>  Grammar: The numeral <b>92</b>  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>97</b>  Test (15 questions) <b>101</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 21-22  Reading: “My Usual Shopping Round ” <b>103</b> “My favourite season” <b>110</b>  Grammar: Prepositions of times and dates <b>105</b>  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>106</b>  Test (15 questions) <b>111</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 23-24  Reading: “Choosing an occupation” <b>113</b> “Want to be a doctor” <b>119</b>  Grammar: The Present Indefinite (Simple) Tense <b>114</b>  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>115</b>  Test (15 questions) <b>120</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 25-26  Reading: “Appearance: Parts of the Face ” <b>122</b> “At the doctor’s” <b>129</b>  Grammar: The Past Simple Tense <b>123</b>  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>125</b>  Test (15 questions) <b>130</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 27-28  Grammar: Review  Writing: Ex. I- X <b>131-136</b></p>	
<p><b>Chapter II</b></p>	
<p>Lesson1  Reading:”Our Country” <b>139</b>  Grammar: Present Continuous Tense <b>141</b>  Writing: <b>142</b></p>	

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

<p>Lesson 2 Reading: “Astana” <b>145</b> Test <b>146</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 3 Reading: “Almaty”  Grammar: Past Continuous Tense <b>149</b> Writing: <b>150</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 4 Reading: “Nauryz meiramy -a great holiday” <b>154</b> Test <b>155</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 5 Reading: “Great Britain” <b>159</b> Grammar: The Future Simple Tense <b>160</b> Writing: <b>162</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 6 Reading: ”London” <b>164</b>, “London’s Place of interest” <b>166</b> Test <b>168</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 7 Reading: “England”  Grammar: The Present Perfect <b>171</b> Writing: <b>172</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 8 Reading: “Northern Ireland” <b>175</b> Test <b>177</b></p>	
<p>Lesson 9 Reading: “Wales”  Grammar: The Past Perfect <b>180</b> Writing: <b>181</b></p>	

BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

.....

Lesson 10 Reading: “Scotland” <b>184</b> Test <b>185</b>	
Lesson 11 Reading: “The USA” <b>186</b> Grammar: Sequence of Tenses <b>190</b> Writing: <b>191</b>	
Lesson 12 Reading: “American Symbols” <b>194</b> Grammar: Modal verbs <b>195</b> Writing: <b>199</b>	
Lesson 13 Reading: “The discovery of America” <b>202</b> Test <b>203</b>	
Lesson 14 Reading: “Washington” <b>205</b> Grammar: The Adverb <b>207</b> Writing: <b>212</b>	
Lesson 15 Reading: “The White House” <b>214</b> Test <b>218</b>	
Lesson 16 Reading: “Native Americans” <b>220</b> Grammar: Gerund <b>215</b> Writing: <b>222</b>	
Lesson 17 Reading: “US Holidays” <b>220</b> Test <b>225</b>	
Lesson 18 Reading: “Canada” <b>223</b> Test <b>225</b>	
Lesson 19 Reading: Holidays Grammar: Prepositions <b>228</b>	

**BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS**

.....

Writing: <b>234</b>	
Lesson 20 Reading: Australia <b>236</b> Test <b>238</b>	
Lesson 21 Reading: An Upside – Down World <b>240</b> Test <b>241</b>	
Lesson 22 Reading: New Zealand <b>242</b> Grammar: Present Simple Passive voice Past Simple Passive voice <b>244</b> Writing <b>247</b>	
Lesson 23 Reading: Education in Kazakhstan <b>249</b> Test <b>251</b>	
Lesson 23 Reading: Our University <b>252</b> Grammar: Present Continuous Passive <b>254</b> Writing: <b>255</b>	
Lesson 24 Reading: Education in Great Britain <b>258</b> Test <b>260</b>	
Lesson 25 Reading: Oxbridge <b>262</b> Grammar: The Present and Past Perfect Passive  Writing: <b>264</b>	
Lesson 26 Reading: The Educational System of the USA <b>266</b> Test <b>267</b>	
Grammar Tables <b>270-285</b> Vocabulary <b>280</b> References <b>310</b>	



BASIC ENGLISH FOR ELEMENTARY AND  
PRE-INTERMEDIATE LEARNERS

ПАЙДАЛАНЫЛҒАН ӘДЕБИЕТТЕР:

1. Қазақстан Республикасының жоғарғы білім беру жөніндегі мемлекеттік стандартына сәйкес шет тілінің типтік оқу бағдарламасы, 2005 жыл.
2. New English File, Elementary Teacher's book, Oxford University press, 2004
3. New English File, Elementary Student's book, Oxford University press, 2004
4. New English File, Elementary Work book, Oxford University press, 2004
5. English- speaking countries, N.Timanovskaya, Тула афтограф, 2000
6. «Учебник английского языка», Бонк Н. А. Москва, 2001
7. Spoken English for beginners, A.Gasina.
8. New Headway Elementary, Oxford university press, 2008
9. English Grammar Practice, В.М. Павлоцкий, Т. М. Тимофеева «Оракул» «Каро», Санк – Петербург 1999
10. Сборник упражнений, Ю. Голицынский, «КАРО» 2006
11. Essential Grammar in Use. Raymond Murphy, Cambridge University Press 1997
12. English Grammar by M. Ganshina and N. Vasilevskaye
13. English Grammar for secondary school, E. Shubin, Y. Syttel
14. Popular English Grammar, Евгения Некрасова, Москва ЗЛЮ «Славянский Дом Книги» 1999
15. Teaching English as a second foreign language. Newbery 1991
16. English-Russian dictionary, V. D. Arakin, Z. S. Vigodskaya, N.N. Iljina, Russkij Jazyk Publishers , Moscow 2005

